



Junos[®] OS

UTM Feature Guide for Security Devices



Modified: 2017-01-16

Juniper Networks, Inc.
1133 Innovation Way
Sunnyvale, California 94089
USA
408-745-2000
www.juniper.net

Juniper Networks, Junos, Steel-Belted Radius, NetScreen, and ScreenOS are registered trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc. in the United States and other countries. The Juniper Networks Logo, the Junos logo, and JunosE are trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc. All other trademarks, service marks, registered trademarks, or registered service marks are the property of their respective owners.

Juniper Networks assumes no responsibility for any inaccuracies in this document. Juniper Networks reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice.

Junos[®] OS UTM Feature Guide for Security Devices
Copyright © 2017, Juniper Networks, Inc.
All rights reserved.

The information in this document is current as of the date on the title page.

YEAR 2000 NOTICE

Juniper Networks hardware and software products are Year 2000 compliant. Junos OS has no known time-related limitations through the year 2038. However, the NTP application is known to have some difficulty in the year 2036.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

The Juniper Networks product that is the subject of this technical documentation consists of (or is intended for use with) Juniper Networks software. Use of such software is subject to the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement ("EULA") posted at <http://www.juniper.net/support/eula.html>. By downloading, installing or using such software, you agree to the terms and conditions of that EULA.

Table of Contents

	About the Documentation	xvii
	Documentation and Release Notes	xvii
	Supported Platforms	xvii
	Using the Examples in This Manual	xviii
	Merging a Full Example	xviii
	Merging a Snippet	xix
	Documentation Conventions	xix
	Documentation Feedback	xxi
	Requesting Technical Support	xxii
	Self-Help Online Tools and Resources	xxii
	Opening a Case with JTAC	xxii
Part 1	Overview	
Chapter 1	Understanding Unified Threat Management	3
	Unified Threat Management Overview	3
	Understanding UTM Custom Objects	5
Chapter 2	Managing UTM Licensing	7
	Understanding UTM Licensing	7
	Updating UTM Licenses (CLI Procedure)	8
Chapter 3	Configuring WELF Logging	9
	Understanding WELF Logging for UTM Features	9
	Example: Configuring WELF Logging for UTM Features	10
Chapter 4	Configuring UTM for Chassis Cluster	13
	Understanding UTM Support for Active/Backup Chassis Cluster	13
	Understanding Chassis Cluster Support for UTM Modules	15
Part 2	Configuring Antispam Filtering	
Chapter 5	Understanding Antispam Filtering	21
	Antispam Filtering Overview	21
	Handling Spam Messages	21
	Blocking Detected Spam	21
	Tagging Detected Spam	22
Chapter 6	Configuring Server-Based Antispam Filtering	23
	Understanding Server-Based Antispam Filtering	23
	Server-Based Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview	24
	Example: Configuring Server-Based Antispam Filtering	25

Chapter 7	Configuring Local List Antispam Filtering	31
	Understanding Local List Antispam Filtering	31
	Local List Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview	32
	Example: Configuring Local List Antispam Filtering	32
Part 3	Configuring Express Antivirus Protection and Pattern Updates	
Chapter 8	Configuring Express Antivirus Protection	43
	Express Antivirus Protection Overview	43
	Express Antivirus Packet-Based Scanning Versus File-Based Scanning	43
	Express Antivirus Expanded MIME Decoding Support	44
	Express Antivirus Scan Result Handling	44
	Express Antivirus Intelligent Prescreening	44
	Express Antivirus Limitations	44
	Express Antivirus Configuration Overview	45
	Example: Configuring Express Antivirus Custom Objects	46
	Configuring Express Antivirus Custom Objects (J-Web Procedure)	49
	Example: Configuring Express Antivirus Feature Profiles	51
	Configuring Express Antivirus Feature Profiles (J-Web Procedure)	57
	Example: Configuring Express Antivirus UTM Policies	59
	Configuring Express Antivirus UTM Policies (J-Web Procedure)	60
	Example: Attaching Express Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies	61
	Attaching Express Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies (J-Web Procedure)	63
Chapter 9	Configuring Express Antivirus Pattern Updates	65
	Understanding Express Antivirus Scanner Pattern Updates	65
	Example: Automatically Updating Express Antivirus Patterns	66
	Example: Automatically Updating Express Antivirus Patterns (J-Web)	67
	Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Express Antivirus Patterns (CLI Procedure)	68
Part 4	Configuring Full Antivirus Protection and Pattern Updates	
Chapter 10	Configuring Full Antivirus Protection	71
	Full Antivirus Protection Overview	71
	Full Antivirus Configuration Overview	72
	Full Antivirus Pattern Update Configuration Overview	73
	Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Custom Objects	75
	Configuring Full Antivirus Custom Objects (J-Web Procedure)	78
	Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Feature Profiles	80
	Configuring Full Antivirus Feature Profiles (J-Web Procedure)	86
	Example: Configuring Full Antivirus UTM Policies	89
	Configuring Full Antivirus UTM Policies (J-Web Procedure)	90
	Example: Attaching Full Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies	91
	Attaching Full Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies (J-Web Procedure)	92

Chapter 11	Configuring Full Antivirus Pattern Updates	95
	Understanding Full Antivirus Pattern Updates	95
	Example: Configuring the Full Antivirus Pattern Update Server	96
	Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns (J-Web)	98
	Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns	98
	Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Full Antivirus Patterns (CLI Procedure)	99
Chapter 12	Configuring File Scanning	103
	Understanding the Full Antivirus Internal Scan Engine	103
	Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Mode Support	104
	Configuring Full Antivirus File Extension Scanning (CLI Procedure)	105
	Example: Configuring Full Antivirus File Extension Scanning	106
	Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Level Settings	107
	Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Scan Settings at Different Levels	108
	Understanding Full Antivirus Intelligent Prescreening	110
	Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Intelligent Prescreening	110
	Understanding Full Antivirus Content Size Limits	111
	Configuring Full Antivirus Content Size Limits (CLI Procedure)	112
	Understanding Full Antivirus Decompression Layer Limits	113
	Configuring Full Antivirus Decompression Layer Limits (CLI Procedure)	114
	Understanding Full Antivirus Scanning Timeouts	114
	Configuring Full Antivirus Scanning Timeouts (CLI Procedure)	115
	Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Session Throttling	115
	Configuring Full Antivirus Scan Session Throttling (CLI Procedure)	116
Chapter 13	Configuring Scan Results and Fallback Options	117
	Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Result Handling	117
	Monitoring Antivirus Scan Engine Status	118
	Monitoring Antivirus Session Status	119
	Monitoring Antivirus Scan Results	119
	Understanding Antivirus Scanning Fallback Options	122
	Example: Configuring Antivirus Scanning Fallback Options	123
Chapter 14	Configuring Application Protocol Scanning	127
	Understanding Full Antivirus Application Protocol Scanning	127
	Understanding HTTP Scanning	128
	Enabling HTTP Scanning (CLI Procedure)	129
	Understanding FTP Antivirus Scanning	130
	Enabling FTP Antivirus Scanning (CLI Procedure)	131
	Understanding SMTP Antivirus Scanning	131
	Understanding SMTP Antivirus Mail Message Replacement	132
	Understanding SMTP Antivirus Sender Notification	132
	Understanding SMTP Antivirus Subject Tagging	133
	Enabling SMTP Antivirus Scanning (CLI Procedure)	133
	Understanding POP3 Antivirus Scanning	133
	Understanding POP3 Antivirus Mail Message Replacement	134
	Understanding POP3 Antivirus Sender Notification	134
	Understanding POP3 Antivirus Subject Tagging	135
	Enabling POP3 Antivirus Scanning (CLI Procedure)	135

	Understanding IMAP Antivirus Scanning	135
	Understanding IMAP Antivirus Mail Message Replacement	136
	Understanding IMAP Antivirus Sender Notification	136
	Understanding IMAP Antivirus Subject Tagging	137
	Understanding IMAP Antivirus Scanning Limitations	137
	Enabling IMAP Antivirus Scanning (CLI Procedure)	137
Chapter 15	Configuring Whitelists	139
	Understanding MIME Whitelists	139
	Example: Configuring MIME Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning	140
	Understanding URL Whitelists	140
	Configuring URL Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning (CLI Procedure)	141
Chapter 16	Configuring HTTP Tricking	143
	Understanding HTTP Tricking	143
	Configuring HTTP Tricking to Prevent Timeouts During Antivirus Scanning (CLI Procedure)	144
Chapter 17	Configuring Notifications	145
	Understanding Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications	145
	Configuring Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications (CLI Procedure)	145
	Understanding E-Mail Virus-Detected Notifications	146
	Configuring E-Mail Virus-Detected Notifications (CLI Procedure)	147
	Understanding Custom Message Virus-Detected Notifications	147
	Configuring Custom Message Virus-Detected Notifications (CLI Procedure)	148
Part 5	Configuring and Managing Sophos Antivirus Protection	
Chapter 18	Configuring Sophos Antivirus Protection	151
	Sophos Antivirus Protection Overview	151
	Sophos Antivirus Features	152
	Understanding Sophos Antivirus Data File Update	154
	Comparison of Sophos Antivirus to Kaspersky Antivirus	154
	Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview	155
	Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Custom Objects	156
	Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Feature Profile	159
	Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus UTM Policies	165
	Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Firewall Security Policies	166
	Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Scanner with SSL Forward Proxy	168
	Managing Sophos Antivirus Data Files	175
Part 6	Configuring and Monitoring Content Filtering	
Chapter 19	Configuring Content Filtering	179
	Content Filtering Overview	179
	Understanding Content Filtering Protocol Support	180
	HTTP Support	180
	FTP Support	181

	E-Mail Support	181
	Specifying Content Filtering Protocols (CLI Procedure)	181
	Content Filtering Configuration Overview	182
	Example: Configuring Content Filtering Custom Objects	183
	Example: Configuring Content Filtering Feature Profiles	185
	Example: Configuring Content Filtering UTM Policies	188
	Example: Attaching Content Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies	190
	Monitoring Content Filtering Configurations	192
Part 7	Configuring Web Filtering	
Chapter 20	Configuring Web Filtering	197
	Web Filtering Overview	198
	Enhanced Web Filtering Overview	200
	Understanding Enhanced Web Filtering Process	201
	Functional Requirements for Enhanced Web Filtering	202
	Example: Configuring Enhanced Web Filtering	206
	Understanding the Quarantine Action for Enhanced Web Filtering	214
	Example: Configuring Site Reputation Action for Enhanced Web Filtering	216
	Understanding Integrated Web Filtering	221
	Integrated Web Filtering Process	222
	Integrated Web Filtering Cache	222
	Integrated Web Filtering Profiles	223
	Profile Matching Precedence	223
	Example: Configuring Integrated Web Filtering	224
	Understanding Local Web Filtering	232
	User-Defined URL Categories	232
	Local Web Filtering Process	233
	Local Web Filtering Profiles	233
	Profile Matching Precedence	234
	Example: Configuring Local Web Filtering	234
	Understanding Redirect Web Filtering	240
	Example: Enhancing Security by Configuring Redirect Web Filtering Using Custom Objects	241
	Displaying Global SurfControl URL categories	249
	Monitoring Web Filtering Configurations	249
Part 8	Configuration Statements and Operational Commands	
Chapter 21	Configuration Statements	253
	action (Security UTM Web Filtering)	258
	address-blacklist	259
	address-whitelist	259
	admin-email	260
	administrator-email (Security Fallback Block)	260
	administrator-email (Security Virus Detection)	261
	allow-email (Security Fallback Block)	261
	allow-email (Security Virus Detection)	262
	application (Security Policies)	262

application-proxy (Security UTM)	263
anti-spam (Security Feature Profile)	263
anti-spam (Security UTM Policy)	264
anti-virus (Security Feature Profile)	265
anti-virus (Security UTM Policy)	269
block-command	269
block-content-type	270
block-extension	270
block-message (Security UTM)	271
block-mime	271
cache	272
category (Security Logging)	273
category (Security Web Filtering)	274
content-filtering (Security Feature Profile)	280
content-filtering (Security UTM Policy)	281
content-size	282
content-size (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine)	283
content-size-limit	284
corrupt-file	284
custom-block-message	285
custom-message (Security Content Filtering)	285
custom-message (Security Email Notify)	286
custom-message (Security Fallback Block)	286
custom-message (Security Fallback Non-Block)	287
custom-message (Security Virus Detection)	287
custom-message-subject (Security Email Notify)	288
custom-message-subject (Security Fallback Block)	288
custom-message-subject (Security Fallback Non-Block)	289
custom-message-subject (Security Virus Detection)	289
custom-objects	290
custom-tag-string	290
custom-url-category	291
decompress-layer	292
decompress-layer-limit	292
default (Security Antivirus)	293
default (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine)	293
default (Security UTM)	294
default (Security Web Filtering)	295
display-host (Security Fallback Block)	296
display-host (Security Virus Detection)	296
download-profile (Security Antivirus FTP)	296
download-profile (Security Content Filtering FTP)	297
email-notify	297
engine-not-ready	298
engine-not-ready (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine)	298
exception (Security Antivirus Mime Whitelist)	299
exception (Security Content Filtering)	299
fallback-block (Security Antivirus)	300
fallback-non-block (Security Antivirus)	301

fallback-options (Security Antivirus Juniper Express Engine)	302
fallback-options (Security Antivirus Kaspersky Lab Engine)	303
fallback-options (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine)	304
fallback-settings (Security Web Filtering)	304
fallback-settings (Security Web Filtering Juniper Local)	305
fallback-settings (Security Web Filtering Websense Redirect)	305
feature-profile	306
filename-extension	313
flag (SMTP)	314
format (Security Log Stream)	315
from-zone (Security Policies)	316
ftp (UTM Policy Anti-Virus)	318
ftp (UTM Policy Content Filtering)	319
host (Security Web Filtering)	319
http-profile (Security Antivirus)	320
http-profile (Security Content Filtering)	320
http-profile (Security Web Filtering)	320
imap-profile (Security UTM Policy Antivirus)	321
imap-profile (Security UTM Policy Content Filtering)	321
intelligent-prescreening	322
interval (Security Antivirus)	323
ipc	324
juniper-enhanced	325
juniper-express-engine	326
juniper-local	327
kaspersky-lab-engine	328
limit (UTM Policy)	329
list (Security Antivirus Mime Whitelist)	330
list (Security Content Filtering Block Mime)	330
log (Security)	331
mime-pattern	334
mime-whitelist	335
no-autoupdate	336
no-intelligent-prescreening	337
no-notify-mail-recipient	338
no-notify-mail-sender (Security Content Filtering Notification Options)	338
no-notify-mail-sender (Security Fallback Block)	339
no-notify-mail-sender (Security Virus Detection)	340
no-sbl-default-server	340
notification-options (Security Antivirus)	341
notification-options (Security Content Filtering)	342
notify-mail-recipient	342
notify-mail-sender (Security Content Filtering Notification Options)	343
notify-mail-sender (Security Fallback Block)	343
notify-mail-sender (Security Virus Detection)	344
no-uri-check	344
out-of-resources	345
out-of-resources (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine)	345
over-limit	346

packet-filter	347
password (Security Antivirus)	348
password-file	348
pattern-update (Security Antivirus)	349
permit-command	349
policies	350
pop3-profile (Security UTM Policy Antivirus)	354
pop3-profile (Security UTM Policy Content Filtering)	354
port (Security Antivirus)	355
port (Security Web Filtering Server)	355
primary-server	356
profile (Security Antispam SBL)	356
profile (Security Antivirus Juniper Express Engine)	357
profile (Security Antivirus Kaspersky Lab Engine)	359
profile (Security Content Filtering)	360
profile (Security Sophos Engine Antivirus)	361
profile (Security Web Filtering Juniper Enhanced)	362
profile (Security Web Filtering Juniper Local)	363
profile (Security Web Filtering Surf Control Integrated)	364
profile (Security Web Filtering Websense Redirect)	365
protocol-command	366
proxy (Security Antivirus)	366
quarantine-message (Security UTM)	367
sbl	367
sbl-default-server	368
scan-extension	368
scan-mode	369
scan-options (Security Antivirus Juniper Express Engine)	369
scan-options (Security Antivirus Kaspersky Lab Engine)	370
scan-options (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine)	370
secondary-server	371
server (Security Antivirus)	371
server (Security Web Filtering)	372
server-connectivity	372
sessions-per-client	373
site-reputation-action	374
size (Security Web Filtering Cache)	375
smtp-profile (Security UTM Policy Antispam)	375
smtp-profile (Security UTM Policy Antivirus)	375
smtp-profile (Security UTM Policy Content Filtering)	376
sockets	376
sophos-engine	377
spam-action	378
surf-control-integrated	379
sxl-retry	380
sxl-timeout	380
timeout (Security Antivirus Fallback Options)	381
timeout (Security Antivirus Fallback Options Sophos Engine)	381
timeout (Security Antivirus Scan Options)	382

timeout (Security Web Filtering)	382
timeout (Security Web Filtering Cache)	383
timeout (Security Web Filtering Fallback Settings)	383
too-many-requests (Security Antivirus Fallback Options)	384
too-many-requests (Security Antivirus Fallback Options Sophos Engine)	384
too-many-requests (Security Web Filtering Fallback Settings)	385
to-zone (Security Policies)	386
traceoptions (Security Antispam)	388
traceoptions (Security Antivirus)	389
traceoptions (Security Application Proxy)	390
traceoptions (Security Content Filtering)	391
traceoptions (Security UTM)	391
traceoptions (Security Web Filtering)	392
traceoptions (SMTP)	393
traffic-options	393
trickling	394
type (Security Antivirus Feature Profile)	394
type (Security Content Filtering Notification Options)	395
type (Security Fallback Block)	395
type (Security Virus Detection)	396
type (Security Web Filtering)	396
upload-profile (Security Antivirus FTP)	397
upload-profile (Security Content Filtering FTP)	397
uri-check	397
url (Security Antivirus)	398
url-blacklist	398
url-pattern	399
url-whitelist (Security Antivirus)	399
url-whitelist (Security Web Filtering)	400
username (Security Antivirus)	400
utm	401
utm-policy	409
utm-policy (Application Services)	410
virus-detection (Security Antivirus)	410
web-filtering	411
websense-redirect	414
Chapter 22	
Operational Commands	415
clear security utm anti-spam statistics	416
clear security utm antivirus statistics	417
clear security utm content-filtering statistics	418
clear security utm session	419
clear security utm web-filtering statistics	420
request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine	421
request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine	422
request security utm anti-virus sophos-engine	423
request system license update	424
show configuration smtp	425
show groups junos-defaults	426

show security log	427
show security policies	430
show security utm anti-spam statistics	438
show security utm anti-spam status	439
show security utm anti-virus statistics	440
show security utm anti-virus status	442
show security utm content-filtering statistics	444
show security utm session	445
show security utm status	446
show security utm web-filtering statistics	447
show security utm web-filtering status	450

List of Figures

Part 7	Configuring Web Filtering	
Chapter 20	Configuring Web Filtering	197
	Figure 1: Websense Redirect Architecture	242

List of Tables

	About the Documentation	xvii
	Table 1: Notice Icons	xx
	Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions	xx
Part 1	Overview	
Chapter 2	Managing UTM Licensing	7
	Table 3: UTM Feature Subscription Service License Requirements	7
Chapter 4	Configuring UTM for Chassis Cluster	13
	Table 4: Web Filtering Mechanisms for Chassis Cluster Support	15
Part 4	Configuring Full Antivirus Protection and Pattern Updates	
Chapter 14	Configuring Application Protocol Scanning	127
	Table 5: Supported Profile-based Settings By Protocol	128
Part 8	Configuration Statements and Operational Commands	
Chapter 21	Configuration Statements	253
	Table 6: List of Categories Predefined by Websense	275
Chapter 22	Operational Commands	415
	Table 7: show configuration smtp	425
	Table 8: show security log Output Fields	428
	Table 9: show security policies Output Fields	431

About the Documentation

- Documentation and Release Notes on page xvii
- Supported Platforms on page xvii
- Using the Examples in This Manual on page xviii
- Documentation Conventions on page xix
- Documentation Feedback on page xxi
- Requesting Technical Support on page xxii

Documentation and Release Notes

To obtain the most current version of all Juniper Networks® technical documentation, see the product documentation page on the Juniper Networks website at <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/>.

If the information in the latest release notes differs from the information in the documentation, follow the product Release Notes.

Juniper Networks Books publishes books by Juniper Networks engineers and subject matter experts. These books go beyond the technical documentation to explore the nuances of network architecture, deployment, and administration. The current list can be viewed at <http://www.juniper.net/books>.

Supported Platforms

For the features described in this document, the following platforms are supported:

- SRX300
- SRX320
- SRX340
- SRX345
- SRX550M
- SRX1500
- SRX4100
- SRX4200
- vSRX

Using the Examples in This Manual

If you want to use the examples in this manual, you can use the **load merge** or the **load merge relative** command. These commands cause the software to merge the incoming configuration into the current candidate configuration. The example does not become active until you commit the candidate configuration.

If the example configuration contains the top level of the hierarchy (or multiple hierarchies), the example is a *full example*. In this case, use the **load merge** command.

If the example configuration does not start at the top level of the hierarchy, the example is a *snippet*. In this case, use the **load merge relative** command. These procedures are described in the following sections.

Merging a Full Example

To merge a full example, follow these steps:

1. From the HTML or PDF version of the manual, copy a configuration example into a text file, save the file with a name, and copy the file to a directory on your routing platform.

For example, copy the following configuration to a file and name the file **ex-script.conf**. Copy the **ex-script.conf** file to the **/var/tmp** directory on your routing platform.

```
system {
  scripts {
    commit {
      file ex-script.xml;
    }
  }
}
interfaces {
  fxp0 {
    disable;
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 10.0.0.1/24;
      }
    }
  }
}
```

2. Merge the contents of the file into your routing platform configuration by issuing the **load merge** configuration mode command:

```
[edit]
user@host# load merge /var/tmp/ex-script.conf
load complete
```

Merging a Snippet

To merge a snippet, follow these steps:

1. From the HTML or PDF version of the manual, copy a configuration snippet into a text file, save the file with a name, and copy the file to a directory on your routing platform.

For example, copy the following snippet to a file and name the file **ex-script-snippet.conf**. Copy the **ex-script-snippet.conf** file to the **/var/tmp** directory on your routing platform.

```
commit {  
  file ex-script-snippet.xml; }
```

2. Move to the hierarchy level that is relevant for this snippet by issuing the following configuration mode command:

```
[edit]  
user@host# edit system scripts  
[edit system scripts]
```

3. Merge the contents of the file into your routing platform configuration by issuing the **load merge relative** configuration mode command:

```
[edit system scripts]  
user@host# load merge relative /var/tmp/ex-script-snippet.conf  
load complete
```

For more information about the **load** command, see [CLI Explorer](#).

Documentation Conventions

[Table 1 on page xx](#) defines notice icons used in this guide.

Table 1: Notice Icons







Icon	Meaning	Description
	Informational note	Indicates important features or instructions.
	Caution	Indicates a situation that might result in loss of data or hardware damage.
	Warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury or death.
	Laser warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury from a laser.
	Tip	Indicates helpful information.
	Best practice	Alerts you to a recommended use or implementation.

Table 2 on page xx defines the text and syntax conventions used in this guide.

Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions

Convention	Description	Examples
Bold text like this	Represents text that you type.	To enter configuration mode, type the configure command: user@host> configure
Fixed-width text like this	Represents output that appears on the terminal screen.	user@host> show chassis alarms No alarms currently active
<i>Italic text like this</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Introduces or emphasizes important new terms. Identifies guide names. Identifies RFC and Internet draft titles. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A policy <i>term</i> is a named structure that defines match conditions and actions. <i>Junos OS CLI User Guide</i> RFC 1997, <i>BGP Communities Attribute</i>
<i>Italic text like this</i>	Represents variables (options for which you substitute a value) in commands or configuration statements.	Configure the machine's domain name: [edit] root@# set system domain-name <i>domain-name</i>

Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions (*continued*)

Convention	Description	Examples
Text like this	Represents names of configuration statements, commands, files, and directories; configuration hierarchy levels; or labels on routing platform components.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">To configure a stub area, include the stub statement at the [edit protocols ospf area area-id] hierarchy level.The console port is labeled CONSOLE.
< > (angle brackets)	Encloses optional keywords or variables.	stub <default-metric <i>metric</i>>;
(pipe symbol)	Indicates a choice between the mutually exclusive keywords or variables on either side of the symbol. The set of choices is often enclosed in parentheses for clarity.	broadcast multicast (<i>string1</i> <i>string2</i> <i>string3</i>)
# (pound sign)	Indicates a comment specified on the same line as the configuration statement to which it applies.	rsvp { # Required for dynamic MPLS only
[] (square brackets)	Encloses a variable for which you can substitute one or more values.	community name members [<i>community-ids</i>]
Indentation and braces ({ })	Identifies a level in the configuration hierarchy.	<pre>[edit] routing-options { static { route default { nexthop <i>address</i>; retain; } } }</pre>
;(semicolon)	Identifies a leaf statement at a configuration hierarchy level.	
GUI Conventions		
Bold text like this	Represents graphical user interface (GUI) items you click or select.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">In the Logical Interfaces box, select All Interfaces.To cancel the configuration, click Cancel.
> (bold right angle bracket)	Separates levels in a hierarchy of menu selections.	In the configuration editor hierarchy, select Protocols>Ospf .

Documentation Feedback

We encourage you to provide feedback, comments, and suggestions so that we can improve the documentation. You can provide feedback by using either of the following methods:

- Online feedback rating system—On any page of the Juniper Networks TechLibrary site at <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/index.html>, simply click the stars to rate the content, and use the pop-up form to provide us with information about your experience. Alternately, you can use the online feedback form at <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/feedback/>.

- E-mail—Send your comments to techpubs-comments@juniper.net. Include the document or topic name, URL or page number, and software version (if applicable).

Requesting Technical Support

Technical product support is available through the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC). If you are a customer with an active J-Care or Partner Support Service support contract, or are covered under warranty, and need post-sales technical support, you can access our tools and resources online or open a case with JTAC.

- JTAC policies—For a complete understanding of our JTAC procedures and policies, review the *JTAC User Guide* located at <http://www.juniper.net/us/en/local/pdf/resource-guides/7100059-en.pdf>.
- Product warranties—For product warranty information, visit <http://www.juniper.net/support/warranty/>.
- JTAC hours of operation—The JTAC centers have resources available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year.

Self-Help Online Tools and Resources

For quick and easy problem resolution, Juniper Networks has designed an online self-service portal called the Customer Support Center (CSC) that provides you with the following features:

- Find CSC offerings: <http://www.juniper.net/customers/support/>
- Search for known bugs: <http://www2.juniper.net/kb/>
- Find product documentation: <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/>
- Find solutions and answer questions using our Knowledge Base: <http://kb.juniper.net/>
- Download the latest versions of software and review release notes: <http://www.juniper.net/customers/csc/software/>
- Search technical bulletins for relevant hardware and software notifications: <http://kb.juniper.net/InfoCenter/>
- Join and participate in the Juniper Networks Community Forum: <http://www.juniper.net/company/communities/>
- Open a case online in the CSC Case Management tool: <http://www.juniper.net/cm/>

To verify service entitlement by product serial number, use our Serial Number Entitlement (SNE) Tool: <https://tools.juniper.net/SerialNumberEntitlementSearch/>

Opening a Case with JTAC

You can open a case with JTAC on the Web or by telephone.

- Use the Case Management tool in the CSC at <http://www.juniper.net/cm/>.
- Call 1-888-314-JTAC (1-888-314-5822 toll-free in the USA, Canada, and Mexico).

For international or direct-dial options in countries without toll-free numbers, see <http://www.juniper.net/support/requesting-support.html>.

PART 1

Overview

- [Understanding Unified Threat Management on page 3](#)
- [Managing UTM Licensing on page 7](#)
- [Configuring WELF Logging on page 9](#)
- [Configuring UTM for Chassis Cluster on page 13](#)

CHAPTER 1

Understanding Unified Threat Management

- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
- [Understanding UTM Custom Objects on page 5](#)

Unified Threat Management Overview

Unified Threat Management (UTM) is a term used to describe the consolidation of several security features into one device, protecting against multiple threat types. The advantage of UTM is streamlined installation and management of these multiple security capabilities.

The security features provided as part of the UTM solution are:

- **Antispam Filtering**—E-mail spam consists of unwanted e-mail messages, usually sent by commercial, malicious, or fraudulent entities. The antispam feature examines transmitted e-mail messages to identify e-mail spam. When the device detects an e-mail message deemed to be spam, it either drops the message or tags the message header or subject field with a preprogrammed string. The antispam feature uses a constantly updated spam block list (SBL). Sophos updates and maintains the IP-based SBL. The antispam feature is a separately licensed subscription service.
- **Content Filtering**—Content filtering blocks or permits certain types of traffic based on the MIME type, file extension, protocol command, and embedded object type. Content filtering does not require a separate license.
- **Web Filtering**—Web filtering lets you manage Internet usage by preventing access to inappropriate Web content. There are three types of Web filtering solutions. In the case of the integrated Web filtering solution, the decision-making for blocking or permitting Web access is done on the device after it identifies the category for a URL either from user-defined categories or from a category server (Websense provides the CPA Server). The integrated Web filtering feature is a separately licensed subscription service. The redirect Web filtering solution intercepts HTTP requests and forwards the server URL to an external URL filtering server provided by Websense to determine whether to block or permit the requested Web access. Redirect Web filtering does not require a separate license. With Juniper Local Web Filtering, the decision-making for blocking or permitting Web access is done on the device after it identifies the category for a URL from user-defined categories stored on the device. With Local filtering, there is no additional Juniper license or remote category server required.

- **Full File-Based Antivirus**—A virus is executable code that infects or attaches itself to other executable code to reproduce itself. Some malicious viruses erase files or lock up systems. Other viruses merely infect files and overwhelm the target host or network with bogus data. The full file-based antivirus feature provides file-based scanning on specific Application Layer traffic checking for viruses against a virus signature database. It collects the received data packets until it has reconstructed the original application content, such as an e-mail file attachment, and then scans this content. The Kaspersky feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, the Kaspersky Lab provides the internal scan engine. The full file-based antivirus scanning feature is a separately licensed subscription service.
- **The Express Antivirus feature** is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, Express Antivirus—Express antivirus scanning is offered as a less CPU intensive alternative to the full file-based antivirus feature. The express antivirus feature, like the full antivirus feature, scans specific Application Layer traffic for viruses against a virus signature database. However, unlike full antivirus, express antivirus does not reconstruct the original application content. Rather, it just sends (streams) the received data packets, as is, to the scan engine. With express antivirus, the virus scanning is executed by a hardware pattern matching engine. This improves performance while scanning is occurring, but the level of security provided is lessened. Juniper Networks provides the scan engine. The express antivirus scanning feature is a separately licensed subscription service.
- **Sophos Antivirus**—Sophos antivirus scanning is offered as a less CPU-intensive alternative to the full file-based antivirus feature. Sophos supports the same protocols as full antivirus and functions in much the same manner; however, it has a smaller memory footprint and is compatible with lower end devices that have less memory. Sophos antivirus is as an in-the-cloud antivirus solution. The virus pattern and malware database is located on external servers maintained by Sophos (Sophos Extensible List) servers, thus there is no need to download and maintain large pattern databases on the Juniper device. The Sophos antivirus scanner also uses a local internal cache to maintain query responses from the external list server to improve lookup performance.



NOTE: The `sessions-per-client limit` CLI command, which imposes a session throttle to prevent a malicious user from generating large amounts of traffic simultaneously, supports the antispam, content filtering, and antivirus UTM features. It does not support Web filtering.



NOTE: Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D60, on SRX1500 Services Gateways and vSRX instances, UTM policies, profiles, MIME patterns, filename extensions, and protocol-command numbers are increased to 500; custom URL patterns and custom URL categories are increased to 1000.



NOTE: Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70, SRX4100 and SRX4200 devices support up to 500 UTM policies, profiles, MIME patterns, filename extensions, and protocol commands, and up to 1000 custom URL patterns and custom URL categories.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D70	Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70, SRX4100 and SRX4200 devices support up to 500 UTM policies, profiles, MIME patterns, filename extensions, and protocol commands, and up to 1000 custom URL patterns and custom URL categories.
15.1X49-D60	Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D60, on SRX1500 Services Gateways and vSRX instances, UTM policies, profiles, MIME patterns, filename extensions, and protocol-command numbers are increased to 500; custom URL patterns and custom URL categories are increased to 1000.
15.1X49-D10	The Kaspersky feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding UTM Custom Objects on page 5](#)
- [Understanding UTM Licensing on page 7](#)
- [Updating UTM Licenses \(CLI Procedure\) on page 8](#)
- [Understanding WELF Logging for UTM Features on page 9](#)
- [Example: Configuring WELF Logging for UTM Features on page 10](#)

Understanding UTM Custom Objects

Before you can configure most UTM features, you must first configure the custom objects for the feature in question. Custom objects are global parameters for UTM features. This means that configured custom objects can be applied to all UTM policies where applicable, rather than only to individual policies.

The following UTM features make use of certain custom objects:

- Web Filtering (see [“Example: Configuring Integrated Web Filtering” on page 224](#))
- Anti-Spam (see [“Server-Based Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview” on page 24](#))
- Content Filtering (see [“Content Filtering Configuration Overview” on page 182](#))

Related Documentation

- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
- [Understanding UTM Licensing on page 7](#)

- [Updating UTM Licenses \(CLI Procedure\) on page 8](#)
- [Understanding WELF Logging for UTM Features on page 9](#)
- [Example: Configuring WELF Logging for UTM Features on page 10](#)

CHAPTER 2

Managing UTM Licensing

- [Understanding UTM Licensing on page 7](#)
- [Updating UTM Licenses \(CLI Procedure\) on page 8](#)

Understanding UTM Licensing

The majority of UTM features function as a subscription service requiring a license. You can redeem this license once you have purchased your subscription license SKUs. You redeem your license by entering your authorization code and chassis serial number into the Customer Service License Management System (LMS) interface. Once your entitlement is generated, you can use the CLI from your device to send a license update request to the LMS server. The LMS server then sends your subscription license directly to the device.



NOTE: UTM requires 1 GB of memory.

Table 3: UTM Feature Subscription Service License Requirements

UTM Feature	Requires License
Antispam	Yes
Antivirus: sophos	Yes
Content Filtering	No
Web Filtering: integrated	Yes
Web Filtering: redirect	No
Web Filtering: local	No
Web Filtering: enhanced	Yes



NOTE: License enforcement is supported on all high-end SRX Series devices. Licensed features including anti-virus or Enhanced Web Filtering will not function until a license has been installed. The license must be installed after installing or upgrading to a new Junos OS Release version. Unlicensed features such as UTM blacklists and whitelists will continue to function without a license.

**Related
Documentation**

- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
- [Understanding UTM Custom Objects on page 5](#)
- [Updating UTM Licenses \(CLI Procedure\) on page 8](#)
- [Understanding WELF Logging for UTM Features on page 9](#)
- [Example: Configuring WELF Logging for UTM Features on page 10](#)

Updating UTM Licenses (CLI Procedure)

To apply your UTM subscription license to the device, use the following CLI command:

```
user@host> request system license update
```

After you install the license and reboot the device, the device reserves more memory for UTM features, and hence decreases the session capacity. Use the **set security forwarding-process application-services enable-utm-memory** command to manually reallocate the memory for UTM features. You must reboot the device for the configuration to take effect.

**Related
Documentation**

- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
- [Understanding UTM Custom Objects on page 5](#)
- [Understanding UTM Licensing on page 7](#)
- [Understanding WELF Logging for UTM Features on page 9](#)
- [Example: Configuring WELF Logging for UTM Features on page 10](#)

CHAPTER 3

Configuring WELF Logging

- [Understanding WELF Logging for UTM Features on page 9](#)
- [Example: Configuring WELF Logging for UTM Features on page 10](#)

Understanding WELF Logging for UTM Features

UTM features support the WELF standard. The WELF Reference defines the WebTrends industry standard log file exchange format. Any system logging to this format is compatible with Firewall Suite 2.0 and later, Firewall Reporting Center 1.0 and later, and Security Reporting Center 2.0 and later.

A WELF log file is composed of records. Each record is a single line in the file. Records are always in chronological order. The earliest record is the first record in the file; the most recent record is the last record in the file. WELF places no restrictions on log filenames or log file rotation policies.



NOTE: Each WELF record is composed of fields. The record identifier field (**id=**) must be the first field in a record. All other fields can appear in any order.

The following is a sample WELF record:

```
id=firewall time="2000-2-4 12:01:01" fw=192.168.0.238 pri=6 rule=3 proto=http  
src=192.168.0.23 dst=6.1.0.36 rg=www.example.com/index.html op=GET result=0  
rcvd=1426
```

The fields from the example WELF record include the following required elements (all other fields are optional):

- **id** (Record identifier)
- **time** (Date/time)
- **fw** (Firewall IP address or name)
- **pri** (Priority of the record)

Related Documentation

- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
- [Understanding UTM Custom Objects on page 5](#)

- [Understanding UTM Licensing on page 7](#)
- [Updating UTM Licenses \(CLI Procedure\) on page 8](#)
- [Example: Configuring WELF Logging for UTM Features on page 10](#)

Example: Configuring WELF Logging for UTM Features

This example shows how to configure WELF logging for UTM features.

- [Requirements on page 10](#)
- [Overview on page 10](#)
- [Configuration on page 10](#)
- [Verification on page 11](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, review the fields used to create a WELF log file and record. See [“Understanding WELF Logging for UTM Features” on page 9](#).

Overview

A WELF log file is composed of records. Each record is a single line in the file. Records are always in chronological order. The earliest record is the first record in the file; the most recent record is the last record in the file. WELF places no restrictions on log filenames or log file rotation policies. In this example, the severity level is emergency and the name of the security log stream is **utm-welf**.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security log source-address 1.2.3.4 stream utm-welf
set security log source-address 1.2.3.4 stream utm-welf format welf
set security log source-address 1.2.3.4 stream utm-welf format welf category
content-security
set security log source-address 1.2.3.4 stream utm-welf format welf category
content-security severity emergency
set security log source-address 1.2.3.4 stream utm-welf format welf category
content-security severity emergency host 5.6.7.8
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure WELF logging for UTM features:

1. Set the security log source IP address.
[edit security log]

```
user@host# set source-address 1.2.3.4
```



NOTE: You must save the WELF logging messages to a dedicated WebTrends server.

2. Name the security log stream.

```
[edit security log]
user@host# set source-address 1.2.3.4 stream utm-welf
```

3. Set the format for the log messages.

```
[edit security log]
user@host# set source-address 1.2.3.4 stream utm-welf format welf
```

4. Set the category of log messages that are sent.

```
[edit security log]
user@host# set source-address 1.2.3.4 stream utm-welf format welf category
content-security
```

5. Set the severity level of log messages that are sent.

```
[edit security log]
user@host# set source-address 1.2.3.4 stream utm-welf format welf category
content-security severity emergency
```

6. Enter the host address of the dedicated WebTrends server to which the log messages are to be sent.

```
[edit security log]
user@host# set source-address 1.2.3.4 stream utm-welf format welf category
content-security severity emergency host 5.6.7.8
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security log** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security log
stream utm-welf {
    severity emergency;
    format welf;
    category content-security;
    host {
        5.6.7.8;
    }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Verifying the Security Log

Purpose Verify that the WELF log for UTM features is complete.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security utm status** command to verify if the UTM service is running or not.

- Related Documentation**
- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
 - [Understanding UTM Custom Objects on page 5](#)
 - [Understanding UTM Licensing on page 7](#)
 - [Updating UTM Licenses \(CLI Procedure\) on page 8](#)

Configuring UTM for Chassis Cluster

- [Understanding UTM Support for Active/Backup Chassis Cluster on page 13](#)
- [Understanding Chassis Cluster Support for UTM Modules on page 15](#)

Understanding UTM Support for Active/Backup Chassis Cluster

A chassis cluster environment supports UTM with:

- Packet Forwarding Engine in active/backup chassis cluster configurations with the Packet Forwarding Engine and the Routing Engine being active in the same node (On SRX Series devices).



NOTE: UTM does not require a separate license for chassis cluster mode. The usual UTM license is sufficient and should be available on both of the nodes in the chassis cluster.

UTM is supported in the following chassis cluster mode:

- **Active/backup mode**—In this mode, all the redundancy groups are active in one cluster node. All the transit traffic is processed by this single node.

The transit traffic includes:

- Traffic forwarded between interfaces for redundancy groups 1 and up that are part of the same node
- Traffic forwarded between RGO-controlled interfaces for redundancy groups 1 and up that are in the same node

Active/active mode is *not* supported.

UTM is supported for the following chassis cluster failover types:

- **Manual failover**—Supports manual failover through the **set chassis cluster failover** command. Both RGO and redundancy groups 1 and up can fail over using this command.
- **RGO automatic failover**—This failover is supported through control link failure, monitoring objects (IP address, interface monitoring), or preempt/priority configuration.

- **Redundancy groups 1 and up automatic failover**—This failover is supported through monitoring objects (IP address, interface monitoring) or preempt/priority configuration. This failover leads to active link changes and can result in active/active mode, which is not supported.
- **Failover through reboot**—A primary node can be changed to a secondary node by rebooting the node. All redundancy groups in the node that's is rebooted will no longer be primary nodes.
- **Failover through flowd restart**—Redundancy groups 1 and up will be changed to secondary nodes when the flowd restarts.

The following UTM features are supported in chassis cluster:

- Content filtering
- URL (Web) filtering
- Antispam filtering
- Express antivirus scanning
- Full file-based antivirus scanning
- Sophos antivirus scanning

All the UTM configurations are either maintained in the Routing Engine or pushed to the Packet Forwarding Engine from the Routing Engine. The configuration synchronization between the two nodes is taken care of by the chassis cluster infrastructure. This holds true for all the UTM modules too. You can configure UTM either from the primary or secondary node, and the same configuration will be reflected in the other node once you commit the first configuration.

There is a dependency on ACL support on control links. The time taken to spawn the processes depends on the device. There will be a small delay for the Unified Threat Management daemon (utmd) to come up operationally, even though utmd daemon is running in the secondary Routing Engine, because there can be a startup delay for all the dependant daemons.

**Related
Documentation**

- *Chassis Cluster Overview*
- *Preparing Your Equipment for Chassis Cluster Formation*
- *Understanding Chassis Cluster Redundancy Groups*
- *Understanding Chassis Cluster Redundant Ethernet Interfaces*
- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
- [Understanding Chassis Cluster Support for UTM Modules on page 15](#)

Understanding Chassis Cluster Support for UTM Modules

- **Content filtering**—Content filtering blocks or permits certain types of traffic based on the MIME type, file extension, and protocol command. The content filter controls file transfers across the gateway by checking traffic against configured filter lists.

In content filtering, the user configuration (mime-pattern/filename-extension/protocol-command/content-type) is pushed from the Routing Engine to the Packet Forwarding Engine real-time (PFE-RT). The filtering decision is entirely based on the user configuration and is done on the Packet Forwarding Engine real-time (PFE-RT) side. For the transit traffic, the configuration lookup (for the block/permit decision) and the entire UTM processing occurs in the Packet Forwarding Engine itself and does not go to the Routing Engine (that is, the complete UTM session resides in the Packet Forwarding Engine).

- **URL (Web) filtering**—Web filtering lookups takes place in the primary Routing Engine and both the Packet Forwarding Engines send the lookup request to the primary Routing Engine.

Four kinds of Web filtering mechanisms supported on SRX100, SRX210, SRX220, SRX240, and SRX650 devices are described in [Table 4 on page 15](#). Platform support depends on the Junos OS release in your installation.

Table 4: Web Filtering Mechanisms for Chassis Cluster Support

Web Filtering Type	Description
Redirect Web filtering	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Decision (allow/deny) is always made by an external Websense server • TCP connections are set up from the utmd daemon to the Websense server • Any request to the Websense server is sent using one of these TCP connections.
Integrated Web filtering	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The local URL Filtering cache maintained on the RT side is updated with the URL to category mappings received from the SurfControl content portal authority (SC-CPA) server for URL lookup requests sent to it. • RT side also maintains a list of categories received from the SC-CPA server. • You can configure actions for various categories received from the SC-CPA server. This configuration is maintained in RT side. • You can define your own categories that contain a list of URLs and IP addresses. A predefined profile (ns-profile) can be used too. This configuration is also maintained on the RT side. • URL lookups are made against the URL Filtering cache and the user-defined categories. • If the category for the URL is not found in the local URL Filtering cache, categorization requests are sent to the utmd daemon and subsequently forwarded to the external SC-CPA Server for response.
Enhanced Web Filtering	Enhanced Web Filtering is similar to integrated Web filtering. It maintains the URL Filtering cache, a list of categories from the server, and a list of user-defined categories. It performs the lookup and categorization similar to integrated Web filtering. It is similar in mechanism but differs in the server functionality to determine URL categories.
Juniper local URL filtering	You can configure URL whitelists or blacklists for the URL lookups. This configuration is maintained on the real-time side of the Packet Forwarding Engine.

- **Antispam filtering**—Antispam filtering pushes the user configuration (whitelist and blacklist) from the Routing Engine to the PFE-RT.
- The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, **Express antivirus scanning**—In express antivirus scanning, the antivirus detection functionality is performed by the Pattern Matching Engine (PME) in the Packet Forwarding Engine of the node where the UTM traffic is anchored. The signature database is downloaded by the primary Routing Engine and synchronized to the secondary Routing Engine to be loaded in its local PME. If configured, the primary Routing Engine does the periodic signature database updates and synchronizes them to the secondary Routing Engine.
- **Full file-based antivirus scanning**—The Kaspersky feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, In full antivirus scanning, the Kaspersky Lab engine is responsible for scanning all the data it receives. The signature database is downloaded from external Kaspersky Lab servers and used by the scan engine in the Routing Engine. Full AV antivirus scanning is done in the Routing Engine of each node where the UTM traffic is anchored. The signature database files are downloaded by the primary Routing Engine and synchronized to the secondary Routing Engine. If configured, the primary Routing Engine performs the periodic signature database update and synchronizes it to the secondary Routing Engine.

Apart from the signature database lookup, full antivirus scanning uses the following configuration that is maintained in the RT side to determine if full antivirus scanning needs to be performed:

- Mime whitelist—A hit bypasses antivirus scanning
- Mime exception list—An exception to the whitelist
- URL whitelist—a hit bypasses antivirus scanning
- Filename extension—Only these extensions are sent for antivirus scanning

The packet processing in full antivirus scanning might occur within RT side based on the result of the user-configured lists. Otherwise, the UTM session spans across the RT and Routing Engine side if full virus scanning needs to be performed.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.
15.1X49-D10	The Kaspersky feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- *Chassis Cluster Overview*
- *Preparing Your Equipment for Chassis Cluster Formation*
- *Understanding Chassis Cluster Redundancy Groups*
- *Understanding Chassis Cluster Redundant Ethernet Interfaces*

- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
- [Understanding UTM Support for Active/Backup Chassis Cluster on page 13](#)

PART 2

Configuring Antispam Filtering

- [Understanding Antispam Filtering on page 21](#)
- [Configuring Server-Based Antispam Filtering on page 23](#)
- [Configuring Local List Antispam Filtering on page 31](#)

CHAPTER 5

Understanding Antispam Filtering

- [Antispam Filtering Overview on page 21](#)
- [Handling Spam Messages on page 21](#)

Antispam Filtering Overview

Spam consists of unwanted e-mail messages, usually sent by commercial, malicious, or fraudulent entities. The antispam feature examines transmitted e-mail messages to identify spam. When the device detects a message deemed to be spam, it blocks the e-mail message or tags the e-mail message header or subject with a preprogrammed string.

Antispam filtering allows you to use both a third-party server-based spam block list (SBL) and to optionally create your own local whitelists (benign) and blacklists (malicious) for filtering against e-mail messages. The antispam feature is not meant to replace your antispam server, but to complement it.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding Server-Based Antispam Filtering on page 23](#)
- [Server-Based Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 24](#)
- [Understanding Local List Antispam Filtering on page 31](#)
- [Local List Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 32](#)
- [Handling Spam Messages on page 21](#)

Handling Spam Messages

There are two possible actions the device can take when spam is detected. It can perform a drop action or a tag action.

- [Blocking Detected Spam on page 21](#)
- [Tagging Detected Spam on page 22](#)

Blocking Detected Spam

The device can block and drop detected spam at either the connection level or the e-mail level:

- Blocking spam at the connection level

When the SMTP sender is identified as a spam sender based on its IP address, the SMTP connection is rejected and dropped. An error message with a proper error code from the firewall is sent out on behalf of the SMTP server. An example of such an error message is:

554 Transaction failed due to anti spam setting

- Blocking spam at the e-mail level

When a particular e-mail sender is identified as spam sender based on its sender address, the e-mail is rejected and dropped. An error message with a proper error code from the firewall is sent back to the sender on behalf of the server. An example of such an error message is:

550 Requested action not taken: mailbox unavailable

Tagging Detected Spam

The device can allow and tag the e-mail if the message sender is detected as a spammer. This tagging can occur at the connection level so that all the e-mails for the connection in question are tagged. Otherwise, you can tag only an individual e-mail. Two tagging methods are supported:

- Tag the subject: A user-defined string is added at the beginning of the subject of the e-mail.
- Tag the header: A user-defined string is added to the e-mail header.

Related Documentation

- [Antispam Filtering Overview on page 21](#)
- [Server-Based Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 24](#)
- [Local List Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 32](#)

CHAPTER 6

Configuring Server-Based Antispam Filtering

- [Understanding Server-Based Antispam Filtering on page 23](#)
- [Server-Based Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 24](#)
- [Example: Configuring Server-Based Antispam Filtering on page 25](#)

Understanding Server-Based Antispam Filtering

Server-based antispam filtering requires Internet connectivity with the spam block list (SBL) server. Domain Name Service (DNS) is required to access the SBL server. The firewall performs SBL lookups through the DNS protocol. The lookups are against the IP address of the sender (or relaying agent) of the e-mail, adding the name of the SBL server as the authoritative domain. The DNS server then forwards each request to the SBL server, which returns a DNS response to the device. The device then interprets the DNS response to determine if the e-mail sender is a spammer.

IP addresses that are included in the block lists are generally considered to be invalid addresses for mail servers or easily compromised addresses. Criteria for listing an IP address as a spammer on the SBL can include:

- Running an SMTP open relay service
- Running open proxy servers (of various kinds)
- Being a zombie host possibly compromised by a virus, worm, Trojan, or spyware
- Using a dynamic IP range
- Being a confirmed spam source with a known IP address

By default, the device first checks incoming e-mail against local whitelists and blacklists. If there are no local lists, or if the sender is not found on local lists, the device proceeds to query the SBL server over the Internet. When both server-based spam filtering and local list spam filtering are enabled, checks are done in the following order:

1. The local whitelist is checked. If there is a match, no further checking is done. If there is no match...
2. The local blacklist is checked. If there is a match, no further checking is done. If there is no match...

3. The SBL server list is checked.



NOTE:

- SBL server matching stops when the antispam license key is expired.
 - Server-based spam filtering supports only IP-based spam block list blacklist lookup. Sophos updates and maintains the IP-based spam block list. Server-based antispam filtering is a separately licensed subscription service. When your antispam license key expires, you can continue to use locally defined blacklists and whitelists.
-

Related Documentation

- [Antispam Filtering Overview on page 21](#)
- [Server-Based Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 24](#)
- [Example: Configuring Server-Based Antispam Filtering on page 25](#)
- [Local List Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 32](#)
- [Understanding Local List Antispam Filtering on page 31](#)
- [Handling Spam Messages on page 21](#)

Server-Based Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview

For each UTM feature, configure feature parameters in the following order:

1. Configure UTM custom objects for the feature:

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects
```

2. Configure the main feature parameters, using feature profiles.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-spam
```

3. Configure a UTM policy for each protocol, and attach this policy to a profile.

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp1 anti-spam smtp-profile smtp1
```



NOTE: Antispam filtering is only supported for the SMTP protocol.

4. Attach the UTM policy to a security policy.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit  
application-services utm-policy utmp1
```

Related Documentation

- [Antispam Filtering Overview on page 21](#)
- [Understanding Server-Based Antispam Filtering on page 23](#)
- [Example: Configuring Server-Based Antispam Filtering on page 25](#)
- [Understanding Local List Antispam Filtering on page 31](#)

- [Local List Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 32](#)
- [Handling Spam Messages on page 21](#)

Example: Configuring Server-Based Antispam Filtering

This example shows how to configure server-based antispam filtering.

- [Requirements on page 25](#)
- [Overview on page 25](#)
- [Configuration on page 25](#)
- [Verification on page 30](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, review how to configure the feature parameters for each UTM feature. See “[Server-Based Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview](#)” on page 24.

Overview

Server-based antispam filtering requires Internet connectivity with the spam block list (SBL) server. Domain Name Service (DNS) is required to access the SBL server.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile sblprofile1 sbl-default-server
set security utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile sblprofile1 sbl-default-server
spam-action block
set security utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile sblprofile1 sbl-default-server
custom-tag-string ***spam***
set security utm utm-policy spampolicy1 anti-spam smtp-profile sblprofile1
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy utmsecuritypolicy1 match
source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy utmsecuritypolicy1 match
destination-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy utmsecuritypolicy1 match
application junos-smtp
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy utmsecuritypolicy1 then permit
application-services utm-policy spampolicy1
```

**GUI Step-by-Step
Procedure**

To configure server-based antispam filtering:

1. Configure a profile and enable/disable the SBL server lookup. Select **Configure>Security>UTM>Anti-Spam**.
 - a. In the Anti-Spam profiles configuration window, click **Add** to configure a profile for the SBL server, or click **Edit** to modify an existing item.
 - b. In the Profile name box, enter a unique name for the antispam profile that you are creating.
 - c. If you are using the default server, select **Yes** next to Default SBL server. If you are not using the default server, select **No**.



NOTE: The SBL server is predefined on the device. The device comes preconfigured with the name and address of the SBL server. If you do not select Yes, you are disabling server-based spam filtering. You should disable it only if you are using only local lists or if you do not have a license for server-based spam filtering.

- d. In the Custom tag string box, enter a custom string for identifying a message as spam. By default, the devices uses *****SPAM*****.
 - e. From the antispam action list, select the action that the device should take when it detects spam. Options include Tag subject, Block email, and Tag header.
2. Configure a UTM policy for SMTP to which you attach the antispam profile.
 - a. Select **Configure>Security>Policy>UTM Policies**.
 - b. In the UTM policy configuration window, click **Add**.
 - c. In the policy configuration window, select the **Main** tab.
 - d. In the Policy name box, type a unique name for the UTM policy.
 - e. In the Session per client limit box, type a session per client limit. Valid values range from 0 to 2000.
 - f. From the Session per client over limit list, select the action that the device should take when the session per client limit for this UTM policy is exceeded. Options include Log and permit and Block.
 - g. Select the **Anti-Spam profiles** tab in the pop-up window.
 - h. From the SMTP profile list, select an antispam profile to attach to this UTM policy.

3. Attach the UTM policy to a security policy.
 - a. Select **Configure>Security>Policy>FW Policies**.
 - b. In the Security Policy window, click **Add** to configure a security policy with UTM or click **Edit** to modify an existing policy.
 - c. In the Policy tab, type a name in the **Policy Name** box.
 - d. Next to From Zone, select a zone from the list.
 - e. Next to To Zone, select a zone from the list.
 - f. Choose a source address.
 - g. Choose a destination address.
 - h. Choose an application by selecting **junos-smtp** (for antispam) in the Application Sets box and move it to the Matched box.
 - i. Next to Policy Action, select one of the following: **Permit**, **Deny**, or **Reject**.



NOTE: When you select Permit for Policy Action, several additional fields become available in the Applications Services tab, including UTM Policy.

- j. Select the **Application Services** tab.
 - k. Next to UTM Policy, select the appropriate policy from the list. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
 - l. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
 - m. If the policy is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation, and you must click **OK** again. If the profile is not saved successfully, click **Details** in the pop-up window to discover why.



NOTE:

- You must activate your new policy to apply it.
- In SRX Series devices the confirmation window that notifies you that the policy is saved successfully disappears automatically.

- n. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure server-based antispam filtering:

1. Create a profile.

```
[edit security]
user@host# set utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile sblprofile1
```

2. Enable or disable the default SBL server lookup.

```
[edit security]
user@host# set utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile sblprofile1
sbl-default-server
```



NOTE: If you are using server-based antispam filtering, you should type `sbl-default-server` to enable the default SBL server. (The SBL server is predefined on the device. The device comes preconfigured with the name and address of the SBL server.) You should disable server-based antispam filtering using the `no-sbl-default-server` option only if you are using only local lists or if you do not have a license for server-based spam filtering.

3. Configure the action to be taken by the device when spam is detected (block, tag-header, or tag-subject).

```
[edit security]
user@host# set utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile sblprofile1sbl-default-server
spam-action block
```

4. Configure a custom string for identifying a message as spam.

```
[edit security]
user@host# set utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile sblprofile1
sbl-default-server custom-tag-string ***spam***
```

5. Attach the spam feature profile to the UTM policy.

```
[edit security]
user@host# set utm utm-policy spampolicy1 anti-spam smtp-profile sblprofile1
```

6. Configure a security policy for UTM to which to attach the UTM policy.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy
utmsecuritypolicy1 match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy
utmsecuritypolicy1 match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy
utmsecuritypolicy1 match application junos-smtp
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy
utmsecuritypolicy1 then permit application-services utm-policy spampolicy1
```



NOTE: The device comes preconfigured with a default antispam policy. The policy is called `junos-as-defaults`. It contains the following configuration parameters:

```
anti-spam {
  sbl {
    profile junos-as-defaults {
      sbl-default-server;
      spam-action block;
      custom-tag-string "****SPAM****";
    }
  }
}
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm** and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security utm
feature-profile {
  anti-spam {
    sbl {
      profile sblprofile1 {
        sbl-default-server;
        spam-action block;
        custom-tag-string ***spam***;
      }
    }
  }
}
utm-policy spampolicy1 {
  anti-spam {
    smtp-profile sblprofile1;
  }
}
```

```
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  policy utmsecuritypolicy1 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application junos-smtp;
    }
    then {
      permit {
        application-services {
          utm-policy spampolicy1;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```
}  
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Verifying Antispam Statistics

Purpose Verify the antispam statistics.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security utm anti-spam status** and **show security utm anti-spam statistics** commands.

The following information appears:

```
SBL Whitelist Server:  
SBL Blacklist Server:  
msgsecurity.example.net  
DNS Server:  
Primary : 1.2.3.4, Src Interface: ge-0/0/0  
Secondary: 2.3.4.5, Src Interface: ge-0/0/1  
Ternary : 0.0.0.0, Src Interface: fe-0/0/2  
  
Total connections: #  
Denied connections: #  
Total greetings: #  
Denied greetings: #  
Total e-mail scanned: #  
White list hit: #  
Black list hit: #  
Spam total: #  
Spam tagged: #  
Spam dropped: #  
DNS errors: #  
Timeout errors: #  
Return errors: #  
Invalid parameter errors: #  
Statistics start time:  
Statistics for the last 10 days.
```

- Related Documentation**
- [Antispam Filtering Overview on page 21](#)
 - [Understanding Server-Based Antispam Filtering on page 23](#)
 - [Server-Based Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 24](#)
 - [Understanding Local List Antispam Filtering on page 31](#)
 - [Local List Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 32](#)
 - [Handling Spam Messages on page 21](#)
 - [spam-action on page 378](#)

CHAPTER 7

Configuring Local List Antispam Filtering

- [Understanding Local List Antispam Filtering on page 31](#)
- [Local List Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 32](#)
- [Example: Configuring Local List Antispam Filtering on page 32](#)

Understanding Local List Antispam Filtering

When creating your own local whitelist and blacklist for antispam filtering, you can filter against domain names, e-mail addresses, and/or IP addresses. Pattern matching works a bit differently depending upon the type of matching in question. For example, pattern matching for domain names uses a longest suffix match algorithm. If the sender e-mail address has a domain name of `aaa.bbb.ccc`, the device tries to match "`aaa.bbb.ccc`" in the list. If no match is found, it tries to match "`bbb.ccc`", and then "`ccc`". IP address matching, however, does not allow for partial matches.

Antispam filtering uses local lists for matching in the following manner:

1. **Sender IP:** The sender IP is checked against the local whitelist, then the local blacklist, and then the SBL IP-based server (if enabled).
2. **Sender Domain:** The domain name is checked against the local whitelist and then against the local blacklist.
3. **Sender E-mail Address:** The sender e-mail address is checked against the local whitelist and then against the local blacklist.

By default, the device first checks incoming e-mail against the local whitelist and blacklist. If the sender is not found on either list, the device proceeds to query the SBL server over the Internet. When both server-based antispam filtering and local list antispam filtering are enabled, checks are done in the following order:

1. The local whitelist is checked. If there is a match, no further checking is done. If there is no match...
2. The local blacklist is checked. If there is a match, no further checking is done. If there is no match...
3. The SBL server list is checked.



NOTE: Local blacklist and whitelist matching continues after the antispam license key is expired.

**Related
Documentation**

- [Antispam Filtering Overview on page 21](#)
- [Local List Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 32](#)
- [Example: Configuring Local List Antispam Filtering on page 32](#)
- [Server-Based Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 24](#)
- [Handling Spam Messages on page 21](#)

Local List Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview

For each UTM feature, configure feature parameters in the following order:

1. Configure UTM custom objects for the feature:

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern url-pattern-name
```

2. Configure the main feature parameters, using feature profiles.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-spam as-profile-name
```

3. Configure a UTM policy for each protocol, and attach this policy to a profile.

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp1 anti-spam smtp-profile smtp1
```

4. Attach the UTM policy to a security policy.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit  
application-services utm-policy utmp1
```

**Related
Documentation**

- [Antispam Filtering Overview on page 21](#)
- [Understanding Local List Antispam Filtering on page 31](#)
- [Example: Configuring Local List Antispam Filtering on page 32](#)
- [Understanding Server-Based Antispam Filtering on page 23](#)
- [Handling Spam Messages on page 21](#)

Example: Configuring Local List Antispam Filtering

This example shows how to configure local list antispam filtering.

- [Requirements on page 33](#)
- [Overview on page 33](#)
- [Configuration on page 33](#)
- [Verification on page 38](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, review how to configure the feature parameters for each UTM feature. See [“Local List Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview” on page 32](#).

Overview

Antispam filtering uses local lists for matching. When creating your own local whitelist and blacklist for antispam filtering, you can filter against domain names, e-mail addresses, and/or IP addresses.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern as-black value [150.61.8.134]
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern as-white value [150.1.2.3]
set security utm feature-profile anti-spam address-whitelist as-white
set security utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile localprofile1
set security utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile localprofile1 spam-action block
set security utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile localprofile1 custom-tag-string
  ***spam***
set security utm utm-policy spampolicy2 anti-spam smtp-profile localprofile1
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy utmsecuritypolicy2 match
  source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy utmsecuritypolicy2 match
  destination-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy utmsecuritypolicy2 match
  application junos-smtp
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy utmsecuritypolicy2 then permit
  application-services utm-policy spampolicy2
```

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure local list antispam filtering:

1. Create local whitelist and blacklist custom objects by configuring a URL pattern list.
 - a. Select **Configure>Security>UTM>Custom Objects**.
 - b. In the UTM custom objects configuration window, select the **URL Pattern List** tab.
 - c. Click **Add** to create URL pattern lists.
 - d. Next to URL Pattern Name, type a unique name.



NOTE: If you are creating a whitelist, it is helpful to indicate this in the list name. The same applies to a blacklist. The name you enter here becomes available in the Address Whitelist and Address Blacklist fields when you are configuring your antispam profiles.

- e. Next to URL Pattern Value, type the URL pattern for whitelist or blacklist antispam filtering.
2. Configure antispam filtering to use the whitelist and blacklist custom objects.
 - a. Select **Configure>Security>UTM>Global options**.
 - b. In the right pane, select the **Anti-Spam** tab.
 - c. Under Anti-Spam, select an Address Whitelist and/or an Address Blacklist from the list for local lists for spam filtering. (These lists are configured as custom objects.)
 - d. Click **OK**.
 - e. If the configuration item is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation, and you must click **OK** again. If it is not saved successfully, click **Details** in the pop-up window to discover why.
 - f. In the left pane under Security, select the **Anti-Spam** tab.
 - g. Click **Add** to configure an anti-spam profile. The profile configuration pop-up window appears.
 - h. In the Profile name box, enter a unique name.
 - i. If you are using the default server, select **Yes** beside Default SBL server. If you are not using the default server, select **No**.



NOTE: If you select No, you are disabling server-based spam filtering. You disable it only if you are using local lists or if you do not have a license for server-based spam filtering.

- j. In the Custom tag string box, type a custom string for identifying a message as spam. By default, the device uses *****SPAM*****.
 - k. In the Actions list, select the action that the device should take when it detects spam. Options include Tag subject, Block email, and Tag header.
3. Configure a UTM policy for SMTP to which you attach the antispam profile.
 - a. Select **Configure>Security>Policy>UTM Policies**.
 - b. In the UTM policy configuration window, click **Add** to configure a UTM policy. The policy configuration pop-up window appears.
 - c. Select the **Main** tab.
 - d. In the Policy name box, type a unique name.
 - e. In the Session per client limit box, type a session per client limit. Valid values range from 0 through 2000.
 - f. From the Session per client over limit list, select the action that the device should take when the session per client limit for this UTM policy is exceeded. Options include Log and permit and Block.
 - g. Select the **Anti-Spam profiles** tab.
 - h. From the SMTP profile list, select the antispam profile that you are attaching to this UTM policy.
 4. Attach the UTM policy to a security policy.
 - a. Select **Configure>Security>Policy>FW Policies**.
 - b. In the Security Policy window, click **Add** to configure a security policy with UTM. The policy configuration pop-up window appears.
 - c. In the Policy tab, type a name in the Policy Name box.
 - d. Next to From Zone, select a zone from the list.
 - e. Next to To Zone, select a zone from the list.
 - f. Choose a source address.
 - g. Choose a destination address.
 - h. Choose an application by selecting **junos-smtp** (for antispam) in the Application Sets box and move it to the Matched box.
 - i. Next to Policy Action, select one of the following: **Permit**, **Deny**, or **Reject**.



NOTE: When you select Permit for policy action, several additional fields become available in the Applications Services tab, including UTM Policy.

- j. Select the **Application Services** tab.
- k. Next to UTM Policy, select the appropriate policy from the list. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
- l. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
- m. If the policy is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation, and you must click **OK** again. If the profile is not saved successfully, click **Details** in the pop-up window to discover why.



NOTE: You must activate your new policy to apply it.

- n. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure local list antispam filtering:

1. Configure the local list spam blocking by first creating your global local spam lists.

```
[edit security]
user@host# set utm custom-objects url-pattern as-black value [150.61.8.134]
user@host# set utm custom-objects url-pattern as-white value [150.1.2.3]
```

2. Configure the local list antispam feature profile by first attaching your custom-object blacklist or whitelist or both.

```
[edit security]
user@host# set utm feature-profile anti-spam address-whitelist as-white
```



NOTE: When both the whitelist and the blacklist are in use, the whitelist is checked first. If there is no match, then the blacklist is checked.

3. Configure a profile for your local list spam blocking.

```
[edit security]
user@host# set utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile localprofile1
```



NOTE: Although you are not using the SBL for local list spam blocking, you configure your profile from within that command similar to the server-based spam blocking procedure.

4. Configure the action to be taken by the device when spam is detected (block, tag-header, tag-subject).

```
[edit security]
user@host# set utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile localprofile1 spam-action
block
```

5. Configure a custom string for identifying a message as spam.

```
[edit security]
user@host# set utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile localprofile1
custom-tag-string ***spam***
```

6. Attach the spam feature profile to the UTM policy.

```
[edit security]
user@host# set utm utm-policy spampolicy2 anti-spam smtp-profile localprofile1
```

7. Configure a security policy for UTM, and attach the UTM policy to the security policy.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy
utmsecuritypolicy2 match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy
utmsecuritypolicy2 match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy
utmsecuritypolicy2 match application junos-smtp
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy
utmsecuritypolicy2 then permit application-services utm-policy spampolicy2
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm** and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security utm
custom-objects {
  anti-spam {
    url-pattern patternwhite;
    address-whitelist as-white;
    sbl {
      profile localprofile1 {
        spam-action block;
        custom-tag-string ***spam***;
      }
    }
  }
}
utm-policy spampolicy2 {
  anti-spam {
    smtp-profile localprofile1;
  }
}
```

```
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  policy utmsecuritypolicy2 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application junos-smtp;
    }
  }
}
```

```
    }  
    then {  
        permit {  
            application-services {  
                utm-policy spampolicy2;  
            }  
        }  
    }  
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Verifying Antispam Statistics

Purpose Verify the antispam statistics.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security utm anti-spam status** and **show security utm anti-spam statistics** commands.

The following information appears:

```
SBL Whitelist Server:  
SBL Blacklist Server:  
msgsecurity.example.net  
DNS Server:  
Primary : 1.2.3.4, Src Interface: ge-0/0/0  
Secondary: 2.3.4.5, Src Interface: ge-0/0/1  
Ternary : 0.0.0.0, Src Interface: fe-0/0/2  
  
Total connections: #  
Denied connections: #  
Total greetings: #  
Denied greetings: #  
Total e-mail scanned: #  
White list hit: #  
Black list hit: #  
Spam total: #  
Spam tagged: #  
Spam dropped: #  
DNS errors: #  
Timeout errors: #  
Return errors: #  
Invalid parameter errors: #  
Statistics start time:  
Statistics for the last 10 days.
```

Related Documentation

- [Antispam Filtering Overview on page 21](#)
- [Understanding Local List Antispam Filtering on page 31](#)
- [Local List Antispam Filtering Configuration Overview on page 32](#)
- [Handling Spam Messages on page 21](#)

- [spam-action on page 378](#)

PART 3

Configuring Express Antivirus Protection and Pattern Updates

- [Configuring Express Antivirus Protection on page 43](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus Pattern Updates on page 65](#)

CHAPTER 8

Configuring Express Antivirus Protection

- [Express Antivirus Protection Overview on page 43](#)
- [Express Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Example: Configuring Express Antivirus Custom Objects on page 46](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus Custom Objects \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 49](#)
- [Example: Configuring Express Antivirus Feature Profiles on page 51](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus Feature Profiles \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 57](#)
- [Example: Configuring Express Antivirus UTM Policies on page 59](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus UTM Policies \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 60](#)
- [Example: Attaching Express Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 61](#)
- [Attaching Express Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 63](#)

Express Antivirus Protection Overview

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, Express antivirus scanning is offered as a less CPU intensive alternative to the full file-based antivirus feature. Express antivirus supports the same protocols as full antivirus and functions in much the same manner, however, it has a smaller memory footprint, compatible with the smaller system memory present on lower end devices.

This topic includes the following sections:

- [Express Antivirus Packet-Based Scanning Versus File-Based Scanning on page 43](#)
- [Express Antivirus Expanded MIME Decoding Support on page 44](#)
- [Express Antivirus Scan Result Handling on page 44](#)
- [Express Antivirus Intelligent Prescreening on page 44](#)
- [Express Antivirus Limitations on page 44](#)

Express Antivirus Packet-Based Scanning Versus File-Based Scanning

Express antivirus uses a different antivirus scan engine than the full file-based antivirus feature and a different back-end hardware engine to accelerate pattern matching for higher data throughput.

The packet-based scanning done by express antivirus provides virus scanning data buffers without waiting for entire file to be received by the firewall, whereas the file-based scanning done by full antivirus can only start virus scanning when entire file is received.

Express Antivirus Expanded MIME Decoding Support

Express antivirus offers MIME decoding support for HTTP, POP3, SMTP, and IMAP. MIME decoding support includes the following for each supported protocol:

- Multi-part and nested header decoding
- Base64 decoding, printed quote decoding, and encoded word decoding (in the subject field)

Express Antivirus Scan Result Handling

With express antivirus, the TCP traffic is closed gracefully when a virus is found and the data content is dropped.



NOTE: Express antivirus supports the following fail mode options: default, engine-not-ready, out-of-resource, and too-many-requests. Fail mode handling of supported options with express antivirus is much the same as with full antivirus.

Express Antivirus Intelligent Prescreening

Intelligent prescreening functionality is identical in both express antivirus and full antivirus.

Express Antivirus Limitations

Express antivirus has the following limitations when compared to full antivirus functionality:

- Express antivirus provides limited support for the scanning of file archives and compressed file formats. Express antivirus can only support gzip, deflate and compressed compressing formats.
- Express antivirus provides limited support for decompression. Decompression is only supported with HTTP (supports only gzip, deflate, and compress for HTTP and only supports one layer of compression) and POP3 (supports only gzip for POP3 and only supports one layer of compression).
- Express antivirus does not support scanning by extension.
- Express antivirus scanning is interrupted when the scanning database is loading.
- Express antivirus may truncate a warning message if a virus has been detected and the replacement warning message that is sent is longer than the original content it is replacing.
- If you switch from express antivirus protection to full file-based antivirus protection, you must reboot the device in order for full file-based antivirus to begin working.



NOTE: Because express antivirus does only packet-based string matching, if you use the standard EICAR file to test express antivirus, you will see false positives. To avoid these false positives, Juniper Networks has disabled scanning on the standard EICAR file to create a modified EICAR file for testing express antivirus. You can download this modified EICAR file from the following links:

<http://www.juniper.net/security/avtest/ss-eicar.txt>

<http://www.juniper.net/security/avtest/ss-eicar.com>

<http://www.juniper.net/security/avtest/ss-eicar.zip>



NOTE: The modified EICAR file must be tested with express antivirus only. The Kaspersky antivirus and Sophos antivirus do not detect this file.



NOTE: The express antivirus feature provides better performance but lower security. Note that if you switch from full file-based antivirus protection to express antivirus protection, you must reboot the device in order for express antivirus to begin working.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding Express Antivirus Scanner Pattern Updates on page 65](#)
- [Express Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Express Antivirus Patterns on page 66](#)

Express Antivirus Configuration Overview

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, for each UTM feature, you should configure feature parameters in the following order:

1. Configure UTM custom objects for the UTM features. The following example enables the mime-pattern, url-pattern, and custom-url-category custom objects:

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category
```

2. Configure main feature parameters using feature profiles. The following examples enables the anti-virus feature profile:

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
```

3. Configure a UTM policy for each protocol and attach this policy to a profile. The following example creates the utmp3 UTM policy for the HTTP protocol:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp3 anti-virus http-profile http1
```

4. Attach the UTM policy to a security policy. The following example attaches the utmp3 UTM policy to the p3 security policy:

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 then permit
application-services utm-policy utmp3
```

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Express Antivirus Protection Overview on page 43](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus Custom Objects \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 49](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus Feature Profiles \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 57](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus UTM Policies \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 60](#)

Example: Configuring Express Antivirus Custom Objects

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to configure express antivirus custom objects.

- [Requirements on page 46](#)
- [Overview on page 47](#)
- [Configuration on page 47](#)
- [Verification on page 49](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

- Decide the type of express antivirus protection you require. See [“Express Antivirus Protection Overview” on page 43](#).
- Understand the order in which express antivirus parameters are configured. See [“Express Antivirus Configuration Overview” on page 45](#).

Overview

In this example, you define custom objects that are used to create express antivirus feature profiles. You perform the following tasks to define custom objects:

- Create two MIME lists called avmime2 and ex-avmime2, and add patterns to the list.
- Configure a URL pattern list called urlist2.

When entering the URL pattern, note the following wildcard character support:

- The `*\.[]\?*` wildcard characters are supported.
- You must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`.
- You can use the asterisk `*` wildcard character only if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a period.
- You can use the question mark `?` wildcard character only at the end of the URL.
- The following wildcard syntax is supported: `http://*example.net`, `http://www.example.ne?`, `http://www.example.n??`.
- The following wildcard syntax is not supported: `*example.net`, `www.example.ne?`, `http://*example.net`, `http://*`.
- Configure a custom URL category list called custurl2, using the urlist2 URL pattern list.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern avmime2 value [video/quicktime
image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vrml]
set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern ex-avmime2 value
[video/quicktime-inappropriate]
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urlist2 value [http://www.example.net
1.2.3.4]
set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custurl2 value urlist2
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure express antivirus filtering custom objects:

1. Create MIME lists, and add MIME patterns to the lists.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects mime-pattern avmime2 value [video/quicktime
image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vrml]
user@host# set custom-objects mime-pattern ex-avmime2 value
[video/quicktime-inappropriate]
```



NOTE: Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure custom URL category list.

2. Configure a URL pattern list custom object.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects url-pattern urllist2 value [http://www.example.net
1.2.3.4]
```

3. Configure a custom URL category list.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects custom-url-category custurl2 value urllist2
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security utm
custom-objects {
  mime-pattern {
    avmime2 {
      value [ video/quicktime image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vrml ];
    }
    ex-avmime2 {
      value video/quicktime-inappropriate;
    }
  }
  url-pattern {
    urllist2 {
      value [ http://www.example.net 1.2.3.4 ];
    }
  }
  custom-url-category {
    custurl2 {
      value urllist2;
    }
  }
}
```



```
}
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Verifying Express Antivirus Custom Objects

Purpose Verify the express antivirus custom objects.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show configuration security utm** command.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Configuring Express Antivirus Custom Objects \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 49](#)
- [Attaching Express Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 63](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus Feature Profiles \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 57](#)

Configuring Express Antivirus Custom Objects (J-Web Procedure)

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to configure express antivirus protection using the J-Web configuration editor, you must first create your custom objects (MIME pattern list, URL pattern list, and custom URL category list).

Configure a MIME pattern list custom object as follows:

1. Select **Configure>Security>UTM Custom Objects**.
2. From the MIME Pattern List tab, click **Add** to create MIME pattern lists.
3. In the Add MIME Pattern pop-up window, next to **MIME Pattern Name**, enter a unique name.



NOTE: Keep in mind that you are creating a MIME whitelist and a MIME exception list (if necessary). Both MIME lists appear in the MIME Whitelist and Exception MIME Whitelist fields when you configure antivirus. Therefore, the MIME list names you create should be as descriptive as possible.

4. Next to MIME Pattern Value, enter the MIME pattern.

5. Click **Add** to add your MIME pattern to the Values list box. Within this box, you can also select an entry and use the Delete button to delete it from the list. Continue to add MIME patterns in this manner.
6. Optionally, create a new MIME list to act as an exception list. The exception list is generally a subset of the main MIME list.
7. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save the selected values as part of the MIME list, then click **Commit Options>Commit**.
8. If the configuration item is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If it is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in the pop-up window that appears to discover why.

Configure a URL pattern list custom object as follows:



NOTE: Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure a custom URL category list.

1. Select **Configure>Security>UTM>Custom Objects**.
2. From the URL Pattern List tab, click **Add** to create URL pattern lists.
3. Next to URL Pattern Name, enter a unique name. This name appears in the Custom URL Category List Custom Object page for selection.
4. Next to URL Pattern Value, enter the URL or IP address you want added to list for bypassing scanning.

When entering the URL pattern, note the following wildcard character support:

- The `*\.[]\?` wildcard characters are supported.
 - You must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`.
 - You can only use the asterisk `*` wildcard character if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a period.
 - You can only use the question mark `?` wildcard character at the end of the URL.
 - The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.example.net`, `http://www.example.ne?`, `http://www.example.n??`.
 - The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*example.net`, `www.example.ne?`, `http://*example.net`, `http://*`.
5. Click **Add** to add your URL pattern to the Values list box. The list can contain up to 8192 items. You can also select an entry and use the Delete button to delete it from the list. Continue to add URLs or IP addresses in this manner.

6. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save the selected values as part of the URL pattern list, then click **Commit Options>Commit**.
7. If the configuration item is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If it is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in the pop-up window that appears to discover why.

Configure a custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list that you created:

1. Select **Configure>Security>UTM>Custom Objects**.
2. From the URL Category List tab, click **Add** to create URL category lists.
3. Next to URL Category Name, enter a unique name. This name appears in the URL Whitelist list when you configure antivirus global options.
4. In the Available Values box, select a **URL Pattern List** name from the list for bypassing scanning and click the right arrow button to move it to the Selected Values box.
5. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save the selected values as part of the URL list, then click **Commit Options>Commit**.
6. If the configuration item is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If it is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in the pop-up window that appears to discover why.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Express Antivirus Protection Overview on page 43](#)
- [Express Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus Feature Profiles \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 57](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus UTM Policies \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 60](#)

Example: Configuring Express Antivirus Feature Profiles

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to configure an express antivirus feature profile.

- [Requirements on page 52](#)
- [Overview on page 52](#)
- [Configuration on page 53](#)
- [Verification on page 56](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

- Decide the type of express antivirus protection you require. See [“Express Antivirus Protection Overview” on page 43](#).
- Understand the order in which express antivirus parameters are configured. See [“Express Antivirus Configuration Overview” on page 45](#).
- MIME patterns must be defined for lists and exception lists. See [“Example: Configuring MIME Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning” on page 140](#).
- Custom objects must be defined. See [“Example: Configuring Express Antivirus Custom Objects” on page 46](#).
- SMTP must be configured on the device. See [“Understanding SMTP Antivirus Scanning” on page 131](#).

Overview

In this example, you configure a feature profile called `junexprof1` and specify custom objects to be used for filtering content.

- Select and configure the Juniper Express Engine as the engine type.
- Select 120 as the time interval for updating the pattern database. The default antivirus pattern-update interval is once a day.



NOTE: The command for changing the URL for the pattern database is:

[edit]

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine  
pattern-update url http://...
```

Under most circumstances, you should not need to change the default URL.

- Enable an e-mail notification with a custom message as pattern file was updated and a custom subject line as AV pattern file updated.
- Configure a list of fallback options as block.
- Configure the notification options for fallback blocking for virus detection. Configure a custom message for the fallback blocking action, and send a notification.
- Configure a notification for protocol-only virus detection, and send a notification as Antivirus Alert.
- Configure content size parameters as 20000.



NOTE: For SRX100, SRX110, SRX210, SRX220, and SRX240 devices, the maximum value for content size is 20,000. For SRX650 devices, the maximum value for content size is 40,000. Platform support depends on the Junos OS release in your installation.

- Enable intelligent prescreening and set its timeout setting to 1800 seconds and trickling setting (applicable only to HTTP) to 600 seconds. This means that if the device receives a packet within a 600-second period during a file transfer or while performing an antivirus scan, it should not time out.



NOTE: Intelligent prescreening is intended only for use with non-encoded traffic. It is not applicable to mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP) or HTTP POST.

- Configure the antivirus scanner to use MIME bypass lists and exception lists. You can use your own custom object lists, or you can use the default list, called `junos-default-bypass-mime`, which ships with the device. The following example enables the `avmime2` and `ex-avmime2` lists.
- Configure the antivirus module to use URL bypass lists. If you are using a URL whitelist (valid only for HTTP traffic), this is a custom URL category that you previously configured as a custom object. For this example, you enable the `custurl1` bypass list.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the `[edit]` hierarchy level, and then enter `commit` from configuration mode.

```
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update interval 120
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update email-notify admin-email administrator@example.net custom-message "pattern file was updated" custom-message-subject "AV pattern file updated"
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile junexprof1 fallback-options content-size block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile junexprof1 fallback-options default block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile junexprof1 fallback-options engine-not-ready block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile junexprof1 fallback-options out-of-resources block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile junexprof1 fallback-options timeout block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile junexprof1 fallback-options too-many-requests block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile junexprof1 notification-options fallback-block custom-message "Dropped due to fallback condition"
```

```
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile junexprof1
notification-options virus-detection type protocol-only
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile junexprof1
notification-options virus-detection custom-message ***virus-found***
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile junexprof1
scan-options content-size-limit 20000
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile junexprof1
scan-options intelligent-prescreening
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile junexprof1
scan-options timeout 1800
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile junexprof1 trickling
timeout 600
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus mime-whitelist list avmime2
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus mime-whitelist list avmime2 exception
ex-avmime2
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus url-whitelist custurl2
```

**Step-by-Step
Procedure**

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure express antivirus feature profiles:

1. Select and configure the engine type.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus type juniper-express-engine
```
2. Select a time interval for updating the pattern database.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine]
user@host# set pattern-update interval 120
```
3. Configure the device to notify a specified administrator when patterns are updated.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine]
user@host# set pattern-update email-notify admin-email
administrator@example.net custom-message "pattern file was updated"
custom-message-subject "AV pattern file updated"
```
4. Create a profile for the Juniper Express Engine, and configure fallback options as block.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine]
user@host# set profile junexprof1 fallback-options content-size block
user@host# set profile junexprof1 fallback-options default block
user@host# set profile junexprof1 fallback-options engine-not-ready block
user@host# set profile junexprof1 fallback-options out-of-resources block
user@host# set profile junexprof1 fallback-options timeout block
user@host# set profile junexprof1 fallback-options too-many-requests block
```
5. Configure a custom notification for the fallback blocking action, and send a notification.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine]
user@host# set profile junexprof1 notification-options fallback-block
custom-message "Dropped due to fallback condition"
```
6. Configure a notification for protocol-only virus detection, and send a notification.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine]
user@host# set profile junexprof1 notification-options virus-detection type
protocol-only
```

7. Configure a custom notification for virus detection.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine]
set profile junexprof1 notification-options virus-detection custom-message
***virus-found***
```

8. Configure content size parameter.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine]
user@host# set profile junexprof1 scan-options content-size-limit 20000
```

9. Configure intelligent prescreening.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine]
user@host# set profile junexprof1 scan-options intelligent-prescreening
```

10. Configure the timeout setting.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine]
user@host# set profile junexprof1 scan-options timeout 1800
```

11. Configure trickling setting.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine]
user@host# set profile junexprof1 trickling timeout 600
```

12. Configure the antivirus scanner to use MIME bypass lists and exception lists.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]
user@host# set mime-whitelist list avmime2
user@host# set mime-whitelist list avmime2 exception ex-avmime2
```

13. Configure the antivirus module to use URL bypass lists.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]
user@host# set url-whitelist custurl2
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm feature-profile anti-virus** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security utm feature-profile anti-virus
mime-whitelist {
  list avmime2;
  exception ex-avmime2;
}
url-whitelist custurl2;
juniper-express-engine {
  pattern-update {
    email-notify {
      admin-email "administrator@example.net";
      custom-message "pattern file was updated";
      custom-message-subject "AV pattern file updated";
    }
  }
  interval 120;
```

```

}
profile junexprof1 {
  fallback-options {
    default block;
    content-size block;
    engine-not-ready block;
    timeout block;
    out-of-resources block;
    too-many-requests block;
  }
  scan-options {
    intelligent-prescreening;
    content-size-limit 20000;
    timeout 1800;
  }
  trickling timeout 600;
  notification-options {
    virus-detection {
      type protocol-only;
      custom-message ***virus-found***;
    }
    fallback-block {
      custom-message "Dropped due to fallback condition";
    }
  }
}
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Verifying the Configuration of Express Antivirus Feature Profile

Purpose Verify the express antivirus feature profile.

Action From operational mode, enter any of the following commands:

- **show configuration security utm**
- **show security utm anti-virus status**
- **show security utm anti-virus statistics**

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Configuring Express Antivirus UTM Policies \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 60](#)
- [Example: Configuring Express Antivirus UTM Policies on page 59](#)

- [Example: Attaching Express Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 61](#)

Configuring Express Antivirus Feature Profiles (J-Web Procedure)

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, after you create your custom objects, configure the antivirus feature profile:

1. Select **Configure>Security>UTM>Global options**.
2. In the **Anti-Virus** tab, next to **MIME whitelist**, select the custom object you created from the list.
3. Next to **Exception MIME whitelist**, select the custom object you created from the list.
4. Next to **URL Whitelist**, select the custom object you created from the list.
5. In the **Engine Type** section, select the type of engine you are using. For express antivirus protection, you should select **Juniper Express**.
6. Next to **Pattern update URL**, enter the URL for the pattern database in the box. Note that the URL is `http://update.juniper-updates.net/EAV/<device version>` and you should not change it.
7. Next to **Pattern update interval**, enter the time interval for automatically updating the pattern database in the box. The default for express antivirus checking is once per day.
8. Select whether you want the pattern file to update automatically (**Auto update**) or not (**No Auto update**).
9. Click **OK** to save the selected values.
10. If the configuration item is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If it is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in the pop-up window that appears to discover why.
11. Under **Security**, in the left pane, select **Anti-Virus**.
12. Click **Add** in the right window to create a profile for the antivirus Juniper Express Engine. To edit an existing item, select it and click **Edit**.
13. In the **Main** tab, next to **Profile name**, enter a unique name for this antivirus profile.
14. Select the **Profile Type**. In this case, select **Juniper Express**.
15. Next to **Trickling timeout**, enter timeout parameters.



NOTE: Trickling applies only to HTTP. HTTP trickling is a mechanism used to prevent the HTTP client or server from timing out during a file transfer or during antivirus scanning.

16. Next to **Intelligent prescreening**, select **Yes** or **No**.



NOTE: Intelligent prescreening is only intended for use with non-encoded traffic. It is not applicable for mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP, and HTTP POST).

17. Next to Content Size Limit, enter content size parameters. The content size check occurs before the scan request is sent. The content size refers to accumulated TCP payload size.
18. Next to Scan engine timeout, enter scanning timeout parameters.
19. Select the Fallback settings tab.
20. Next to Default (fallback option), select Log and permit or Block from the list. In most cases, Block is the default fallback option.
21. Next to Decompress Layer (fallback option), select Log and permit or Block from the list.
22. Next to Content Size (fallback option), select Log and permit or Block from the list.
23. Next to Engine Not Ready (fallback option), select Log and permit or Block from the list.
24. Next to Timeout (fallback option), select Log and permit or Block from the list.
25. Next to Out of Resource (fallback option), select Log and permit or Block from the list.
26. Next to Too Many Requests (fallback option), select Log and permit or Block from the list.
27. Select the Notification options tab.
28. In the Fallback block section, next to Notification type, select Protocol Only or Message to select the type of notification that is sent when a fallback option of block is triggered.
29. Next to Notify mail sender, select Yes or No.
30. If you selected Yes, next to Custom Message, enter text for the message body of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
31. Next to Custom message subject, enter text to appear in the subject line of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
32. In the Fallback non block section, next to Notify mail recipient, select Yes or No.
33. If you selected Yes, next to Custom Message, enter text for the message body of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
34. Next to Custom message subject, enter text to appear in the subject line of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
35. Select the Notification options cont tab.
36. In the Virus detection section, next to Notification type, select Protocol Only or Message to select the type of notification that is sent when a fallback option of block is triggered.
37. Next to Notify mail sender, select Yes or No.

38. If you selected Yes, next to Custom Message, enter text for the message body of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
39. Next to Custom message subject, enter text to appear in the subject line of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message). The limit is 255 characters.
40. Click OK to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration, then click Commit Options>Commit.
41. If the configuration item is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click OK again. If it is not saved successfully, you can click Details in the pop-up that appears window to discover why.



NOTE: You create a separate antivirus profile for each antivirus protocol. These profiles may basically contain the same configuration information, but when you are creating your UTM policy for antivirus, the UTM policy configuration page provides separate antivirus profile selection fields for each supported protocol.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Express Antivirus Protection Overview on page 43](#)
- [Express Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus Custom Objects \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 49](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus UTM Policies \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 60](#)

Example: Configuring Express Antivirus UTM Policies

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to create an express antivirus UTM policy to attach to your feature profile.

- [Requirements on page 59](#)
- [Overview on page 60](#)
- [Configuration on page 60](#)
- [Verification on page 60](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, create an antivirus feature profile. See [“Example: Configuring Express Antivirus Feature Profiles” on page 51](#).

Overview

In this example, you configure an express antivirus UTM policy called `utmp3` and attach the policy to the antivirus profile called `junexprof1`.

Configuration

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure an express antivirus UTM policy:

1. Create a UTM policy for HTTP antivirus scanning and attach the policy to the profile.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp3 anti-virus http-profile junexprof1
```

2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

[edit]

```
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security utm** command.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Express Antivirus Protection Overview on page 43](#)
- [Express Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Example: Attaching Express Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 61](#)

Configuring Express Antivirus UTM Policies (J-Web Procedure)

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, after you have created an antivirus feature profile, configure a UTM policy to which you can attach the feature profile:

1. Select **Configure>Security>Policy>UTM Policies**.
2. From the UTM policy configuration window, click **Add** to configure a UTM policy. The policy configuration pop-up window appears.
3. Select the **Main** tab.
4. In the **Policy name** box, enter a unique name.
5. In the **Session per client limit** box, enter a session per client limit from 0 to 20000 for this UTM policy.

6. In the Session per client over limit list, select the action that the device should take when the session per client limit for this UTM policy is exceeded. Options include **Log and permit** and **Block**.
7. Select the **Anti-Virus profiles** tab.
8. Select the appropriate profile you have configured from the list for the corresponding protocol listed.
9. Click **OK**.
10. If the policy is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If the profile is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in the pop-up window that appears to discover why.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Express Antivirus Protection Overview on page 43](#)
- [Express Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus Custom Objects \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 49](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus Feature Profiles \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 57](#)

Example: Attaching Express Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to attach an express antivirus UTM policy to a security policy.

- [Requirements on page 61](#)
- [Overview on page 61](#)
- [Configuration on page 62](#)
- [Verification on page 62](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, create a UTM policy. See [“Example: Configuring Express Antivirus UTM Policies” on page 59](#).

Overview

In this example, you attach the express antivirus UTM policy called utmp3 to the security policy called p3.

Configuration

Step-by-Step Procedure

To attach an express antivirus UTM policy to a security policy:

1. Enable and configure the security policy.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 match
application junos-http
```
2. Attach the UTM policy to the security policy.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 then
permit application-services utm-policy utmp3
```
3. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter **show security policies detail** from operational mode.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Express Antivirus Protection Overview on page 43](#)
- [Express Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Example: Configuring Express Antivirus Feature Profiles on page 51](#)
- [Attaching Express Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 63](#)

Attaching Express Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies (J-Web Procedure)

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, after you create a UTM policy, create a security policy and attach the UTM policy to the security policy:

1. Select **Configure>Security>Policy>FW Policies**.
2. From the Security Policy window, click **Add** to configure a security policy with UTM. The policy configuration pop-up window appears.
3. In the Policy tab, enter a name in the **Policy Name** box.
4. Next to Default Policy Action, select one of the following: **Deny-All** or **Permit-All**.
5. Next to **From Zone**, select a zone from the list.
6. Next to **To Zone**, select a zone from the list.
7. Under Zone Direction, click **Add a Policy**.
8. Choose a **Source Address**.
9. Choose a **Destination Address**.
10. Choose an application by selecting **junos-protocol** (for all protocols that support antivirus scanning) in the Application Sets box and clicking the —> button to move it to the Matched box.
11. Next to Policy Action, select **Permit**.



NOTE: When you select Permit for Policy Action, several additional fields become available in the Applications Services tab, including UTM Policy.

12. Select the **Application Services** tab.
13. Next to **UTM Policy**, select the appropriate policy from the list. This action attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
14. Click **OK**.
15. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration, then click **Commit Options>Commit**.
16. If the policy is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If the profile is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in the pop-up window that appears to discover why.

You must activate your new policy to apply it.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

**Related
Documentation**

- [Express Antivirus Protection Overview on page 43](#)
- [Express Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus Custom Objects \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 49](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus Feature Profiles \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 57](#)
- [Configuring Express Antivirus UTM Policies \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 60](#)

CHAPTER 9

Configuring Express Antivirus Pattern Updates

- [Understanding Express Antivirus Scanner Pattern Updates on page 65](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Express Antivirus Patterns on page 66](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Express Antivirus Patterns \(J-Web\) on page 67](#)
- [Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Express Antivirus Patterns \(CLI Procedure\) on page 68](#)

Understanding Express Antivirus Scanner Pattern Updates

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, Express antivirus uses a different signature database than the full antivirus signature database. The express antivirus signature database is called Juniper Express antivirus database and it is compatible with the hardware engine. The express signature database targets only critical viruses and malware, including worms, Trojans, and spyware. This is a smaller sized database, providing less coverage than the full antivirus signature database.

The express antivirus pattern database is updated over HTTP or HTTPS and can occur automatically or manually. This is similar functionality to that found in full antivirus with some minor differences:

- With express antivirus, the signature database auto-update interval, is once a day.
- With express antivirus, there is no support for the downloading of multiple database types.
- With express antivirus, during database loading, all scan operations are interrupted. Scan operations for existing traffic flows are stopped and no new scan operations are initiated for newly established traffic flows. You can specify the desired action for this interruption period using the fall-back parameter for engine-busy-loading-database. The available actions are block or log-and-permit.
- By default, the URL for express antivirus is <http://update.juniper-updates.net/EAV/SRX-platform-name> where *SRX-platform-name* is the name of your device. If your device is an SRX210, then the URL for express antivirus would be <http://update.juniper-updates.net/EAV/SRX210>. The *SRX-platform-name* part of the URL is different and platform-specific. (Other than the platform name, you

should not change this URL unless you are experiencing problems with it and have called for support. Platform support depends on the Junos OS release in your installation.)



NOTE: Once your subscription expires, you have a 30 day grace period during which you can continue to update the antivirus pattern file. Once that grace period expires, the update server no longer permits antivirus pattern file updates.

The express Antivirus scanning feature is a separately licensed subscription service. When your antivirus license key expires, you can continue to use locally stored antivirus signatures. But in that case, if the local database is deleted, antivirus scanning is disabled.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Express Antivirus Protection Overview on page 43](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Express Antivirus Patterns \(J-Web\) on page 67](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Express Antivirus Patterns on page 66](#)
- [Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Express Antivirus Patterns \(CLI Procedure\) on page 68](#)

Example: Automatically Updating Express Antivirus Patterns

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to update the pattern file automatically on a security device.

- [Requirements on page 66](#)
- [Overview on page 67](#)
- [Configuration on page 67](#)
- [Verification on page 67](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

- Obtain a valid antivirus scanner license. See [“Full Antivirus Protection Overview” on page 71](#).
- Get network connectivity and access to the pattern database server. See [“Understanding Full Antivirus Pattern Updates” on page 95](#).

- Configure your DNS settings and port settings (port 80) correctly. See *DNS Overview*.

Overview

In this example, you configure the security device to update the pattern file automatically every 120 minutes. (The default antivirus pattern-update interval is once a day.)

Configuration

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure the security device to update the pattern file automatically:

1. Set the interval.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
pattern-update interval 120
```

2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

[edit]

```
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security utm** command.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Express Antivirus Protection Overview on page 43](#)
- [Understanding Express Antivirus Scanner Pattern Updates on page 65](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Express Antivirus Patterns \(J-Web\) on page 67](#)
- [Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Express Antivirus Patterns \(CLI Procedure\) on page 68](#)

Example: Automatically Updating Express Antivirus Patterns (J-Web)

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, in this example, you configure the security device to update the pattern file automatically every 120 minutes. (The default antivirus pattern-update interval is once a day.)

To automatically update antivirus patterns:

1. Select **Configure>Security>UTM>Anti-Virus**.
2. Next to Interval, in the Juniper Express Engine section, enter **120** in the box.

- Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration, then click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Express Antivirus Protection Overview on page 43](#)
- [Understanding Express Antivirus Scanner Pattern Updates on page 65](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Express Antivirus Patterns on page 66](#)
- [Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Express Antivirus Patterns \(CLI Procedure\) on page 68](#)

Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Express Antivirus Patterns (CLI Procedure)

The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to manually update antivirus patterns, enter the following CLI statement:

```
user@host> request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update
```

To manually reload antivirus patterns, enter the following CLI statement:

```
user@host> request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-reload
```

To manually delete antivirus patterns, enter the following CLI statement:

```
user@host> request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-delete
```

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Express Antivirus Protection Overview on page 43](#)
- [Understanding Express Antivirus Scanner Pattern Updates on page 65](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Express Antivirus Patterns \(J-Web\) on page 67](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Express Antivirus Patterns on page 66](#)

PART 4

Configuring Full Antivirus Protection and Pattern Updates

- [Configuring Full Antivirus Protection on page 71](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Pattern Updates on page 95](#)
- [Configuring File Scanning on page 103](#)
- [Configuring Scan Results and Fallback Options on page 117](#)
- [Configuring Application Protocol Scanning on page 127](#)
- [Configuring Whitelists on page 139](#)
- [Configuring HTTP Trickling on page 143](#)
- [Configuring Notifications on page 145](#)

CHAPTER 10

Configuring Full Antivirus Protection

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Full Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 72](#)
- [Full Antivirus Pattern Update Configuration Overview on page 73](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Custom Objects on page 75](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Custom Objects \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 78](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Feature Profiles on page 80](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Feature Profiles \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 86](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus UTM Policies on page 89](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus UTM Policies \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 90](#)
- [Example: Attaching Full Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 91](#)
- [Attaching Full Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 92](#)

Full Antivirus Protection Overview

The Kaspersky and Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, a virus is executable code that infects or attaches itself to other executable code in order to reproduce itself. Some malicious viruses erase files or lock up systems, while other viruses merely infect files and can overwhelm the target host or network with bogus data. The full file-based antivirus feature provides file-based scanning on specific Application Layer traffic checking for viruses against a virus signature database. It collects the received data packets until it has reconstructed the original application content, such as an e-mail file attachment, and then scans this content.

The full file-based antivirus scanning feature is a separately licensed subscription service. Kaspersky Lab provides the scan engine for full file-based antivirus. When your antivirus license key expires, you can continue to use locally stored antivirus signatures without any updates. But in that case, if the local database is deleted, antivirus scanning is disabled.



NOTE: The express antivirus feature provides better performance but lower security. Note that if you switch from full file-based antivirus protection to express antivirus protection, you must reboot the device in order for express antivirus to begin working.

The Kaspersky scan engine is provided as a downloadable UTM module. To download the Kaspersky scan engine, your SRX Series device must have an active UTM license. When you install the KAV license, the system automatically downloads the Kaspersky module from the Juniper Networks server and runs it.

When you set the antivirus type to KAV, and if the SRX Series device had a preinstalled Kaspersky engine, then the downloaded module replaces the original module on the device. Regardless of the UTM license status, when the KAV license is deleted from the device, the Kaspersky engine and all files associated with KAV are removed from the system immediately.

Use the **set security utm feature-profile anti-virus type kaspersky-lab-engine** command to set the antivirus type to KAV. If Kaspersky engine is not available on the device, and if the Kaspersky engine cannot be downloaded from the predefined URL, then use the **set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update url url** command to configure the downloading application URL.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Kaspersky and Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding Full Antivirus Pattern Updates on page 95](#)
- [Full Antivirus Pattern Update Configuration Overview on page 73](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Level Settings on page 107](#)
- [Understanding the Full Antivirus Internal Scan Engine on page 103](#)
- [Full Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 72](#)

Full Antivirus Configuration Overview

The Kaspersky and Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, when configuring antivirus protection, you must first create the antivirus custom objects you are using. Those custom objects may include the MIME pattern list, MIME exception list, and the filename extension list. Once you have created your custom objects, you can configure full antivirus protection, including intelligent prescreening, and content size limits.

To configure full file-based antivirus protection:

1. Configure UTM custom objects for the UTM feature. The following example enables the mime-pattern, filename-extension, url-pattern, and custom-url-category custom-objects:

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern
user@host# set security utm custom-objects filename-extension
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category
```

2. Configure the main feature parameters using feature profiles. The following example enables options using the anti virus feature profile:

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine
pattern-update
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile
fallback-options
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile
notification-options
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile
scan-options
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile
trickling
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus mime-whitelist
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus url-whitelist
```

3. Configure a UTM policy for each protocol and attach this policy to a profile. The following example configure the utmp2 UTM policy for the HTTP protocol:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp2 anti-virus http-profile http1
```

4. Attach the UTM policy to a security policy. The following example attaches the utmp2 UTM policy to the p2 security policy:

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 then permit
application-services utm-policy utmp2
```

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Kaspersky and Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)

Full Antivirus Pattern Update Configuration Overview

The Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, Before you begin, there are several prerequisites that must be met in order to perform a successful pattern database update:

- You must have a valid antivirus scanner license.

- You must have network connectivity and access to the pattern database server.
- Your DNS settings and port settings (port 80) must be correct.

To update the patterns for the antivirus signature database:

1. On the security device, specify the URL address of the pattern-update server.
2. (Optional) Specify how often the device should automatically check for pattern-server updates.

After the security device downloads the server-initialization file, the device checks that the pattern file is valid. The device then parses the file to obtain information about it, including the file version, size, and location of the pattern file server.

If the pattern file on the security device is out-of-date (or nonexistent because this is the first time you are loading it), and, if the antivirus pattern-update service subscription is still valid, the device automatically retrieves an updated pattern file from the pattern file server.

The following is an example of the CLI for configuring the database update feature:

```
utm {
  feature-profile {
    anti-virus {
      type
        kaspersky-lab-engine {
          pattern-update
            url url
            interval minutes
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Pattern Updates on page 95](#)
- [Example: Configuring the Full Antivirus Pattern Update Server on page 96](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns \(J-Web\) on page 98](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns on page 98](#)
- [Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Full Antivirus Patterns \(CLI Procedure\) on page 99](#)

Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Custom Objects

The Kaspersky and Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to configure full antivirus custom objects.

- [Requirements on page 75](#)
- [Overview on page 75](#)
- [Configuration on page 75](#)
- [Verification on page 77](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

- Decide the type of full antivirus protection you require. See “[Full Antivirus Protection Overview](#)” on page 71.
- Understand the order in which full antivirus parameters are configured. See “[Full Antivirus Pattern Update Configuration Overview](#)” on page 73.

Overview

In this example, you define custom objects that are used to create full antivirus feature profiles. You perform the following tasks to define custom objects:

1. Configure a filename extension list called `extlist1` and add extensions such as `.zip`, `.js`, and `.vbs` to the list.
2. Create two MIME lists called `avmime1` and `ex-avmime1` and add patterns to the list.
3. Configure a URL pattern list called `urllist1`.
4. Configure a custom URL category list called `custurl1` using the `urllist1` URL pattern list.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm custom-objects filename-extension extlist1 value [zip js vbs]
set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern avmime1 value [video/quicktime
image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vrml]
set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern ex-avmime1 value
[video/quicktime-inappropriate]
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist1 value [http://www.url.com 5.6.7.8]
set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custurl1 value urllist1
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure full antivirus filtering custom objects:

1. Configure the filename extension list and add extensions to it.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects filename-extension extlist1 value [zip js vbs]
```



NOTE: The Kaspersky scan engine ships with a read-only default extension list that you can use.

2. Create MIME lists and add MIME patterns to the lists.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects mime-pattern avmime1 value [video/quicktime
image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vrml]
user@host# set custom-objects mime-pattern ex-avmime1 value
[video/quicktime-inappropriate]
```

3. Configure a URL pattern list.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects url-pattern urllist1 value [http://www.url.com
5.6.7.8]
```

When entering the URL pattern, note the following wildcard character support:

- The `*\.[]\?*` wildcard characters are supported.
- You must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`.
- You can only use the asterisk `*` wildcard character if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a period.
- You can only use the question mark `?` wildcard character at the end of the URL.
- The following wildcard syntax is supported: `http://*example.net`, `http://www.example.ne?`, `http://www.example.n??`.
- The following wildcard syntax is not supported: `*example.net`, `www.example.ne?`, `http://*example.net`, `http://*`.



NOTE: Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure custom URL category lists.

4. Configure a custom URL category list.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects custom-url-category custurl1 value urllist1
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
userhost# show security utm
custom-objects {
  mime-pattern {
    avmime1 {
      value [ video/quicktime image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vrml ];
    }
    ex-avmime1 {
      value video/quicktime-inappropriate;
    }
  }
  filename-extension {
    extlist1 {
      value [ zip js vbs ];
    }
  }
  url-pattern {
    urlist1 {
      value [ http://www.url.com 5.6.7.8 ];
    }
  }
  custom-url-category {
    custurl1 {
      value urlist1;
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Verifying Full Antivirus Custom Objects

Purpose Verify the full antivirus custom objects.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show configuration security utm** command.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Kaspersky and Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Feature Profiles on page 80](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Feature Profiles \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 86](#)

Configuring Full Antivirus Custom Objects (J-Web Procedure)

The Kaspersky and Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to configure antivirus protection, you must first create your custom objects (MIME Pattern List, Filename Extension List, URL Pattern List, and Custom URL Category List).

Configure a MIME pattern list custom object:

1. Select **Configure>Security>UTM>Custom Objects**.
2. From the MIME Pattern List tab, click the **Add** button to create MIME pattern lists.
3. In the Add MIME Pattern pop-up window, next to **MIME Pattern Name**, enter a unique name.



NOTE: Keep in mind that you are creating a MIME whitelist and a MIME exception list (if necessary). Both MIME lists appear in the MIME Whitelist and Exception MIME Whitelist fields when you configure antivirus. Therefore, the MIME list names you create should be as descriptive as possible.

4. Next to **MIME Pattern Value**, enter the MIME pattern.
5. Click **Add** to add your MIME pattern to the Values list box. Within this box, you can also select an entry and use the Delete button to delete it from the list. Continue to add MIME patterns in this manner.
6. Optionally, create a new MIME list to act as an exception list. The exception list is generally a subset of the main MIME list.
7. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save the selected values as part of the MIME list, then click **Commit Options>Commit**.
8. If the configuration item is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If it is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in the pop-up window that appears to discover why.

Configure a filename extension list custom object:

1. Select **Configure>Security>UTM>Custom Objects**.
2. From the Filename Extension List tab, click the **Add** button to create filename extension lists.
3. Next to **File Extension Name**, enter a unique name. This name appears in the Scan Option By Extension list when you configure an antivirus profile.
4. In the **Available Values** box, select one or more default values (press Shift to select multiple concurrent items or press Ctrl to select multiple separate items) and click the right arrow button to move the value or values to the Selected Values box.

5. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration, then click **Commit Options>Commit**.
6. If the configuration item is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If the profile is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in the pop-up window that appears to discover why.

Configure a URL pattern list custom object:



NOTE: Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure a custom URL category list.

1. Select **Configure>Security>UTM>Custom Objects**.
2. From the URL Pattern List tab, click the **Add** button to create URL pattern lists.
3. Next to URL Pattern Name, enter a unique name. This name appears in the Custom URL Category List Custom Object page for selection.
4. Next to **URL Pattern Value**, enter the URL or IP address you want added to the list for bypassing scanning.

When entering the URL pattern, note the following wildcard character support:

- The `*\.[\]\?*` wildcard characters are supported.
 - You must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`.
 - You can only use the asterisk `*` wildcard character if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a period.
 - You can only use the question mark `?` wildcard character at the end of the URL.
 - The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.example.net`, `http://www.example.ne?`, `http://www.example.n??`.
 - The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*example.net`, `www.example.ne?`, `http://*example.net`, `http://*`.
5. Click **Add** to add your URL pattern to the Values list box. The list can contain up to 8192 items. You can also select an entry and use the Delete button to delete it from the list. Continue to add URLs or IP addresses in this manner.
 6. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save the selected values as part of the URL pattern list you have created, then click **Commit Options>Commit**.
 7. If the configuration item is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If it is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in the pop-up window that appears to discover why.

Configure a custom URL category list custom object:



NOTE: Because you use URL Pattern Lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure a custom URL category list.

1. Select **Configure>Security>UTM>Custom Objects**.
2. In the URL Category List tab, click **Add** to create URL category lists.
3. Next to **URL Category Name**, enter a unique name. This name appears in the URL Whitelist list when you configure antivirus global options.
4. In the **Available Values** box, select a URL Pattern List name from the list for bypassing scanning and click the right arrow button to move it to the Selected Values box.
5. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save the selected values as part of the URL list that you have created, then click **Commit Options>Commit**.
Click **OK** to save the selected values as part of the custom URL list you have created.
6. If the configuration item is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If it is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in the pop-up window that appears to discover why.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Kaspersky and Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Feature Profiles \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 86](#)

Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Feature Profiles

The full antivirus feature profile is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to configure a full antivirus feature profile.

- [Requirements on page 80](#)
- [Overview on page 81](#)
- [Configuration on page 82](#)
- [Verification on page 86](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

- Decide the type of full antivirus protection you require. See [“Full Antivirus Protection Overview” on page 71](#).
- Understand the order in which full antivirus parameters are configured. See [“Full Antivirus Configuration Overview” on page 72](#).
- MIME patterns must be defined for lists and exception lists. See [“Example: Configuring MIME Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning” on page 140](#).

Overview

In this example, you configure a feature profile called `kasprof1` and specify custom objects to be used for filtering content:

- Select and configure the engine type as Kaspersky Lab Engine.
- Select 120 as the time interval for updating the pattern database. The default full file-based antivirus pattern-update interval is 60 minutes.



NOTE: The command for changing the URL for the pattern database is:

[edit]

```
user@host# edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine
```

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
```

```
user@host# set pattern-update url http://.
```

The default URL is `http://update.juniper-updates.net/AV/<device-version>`. You should not change this URL unless you are experiencing problems with it and have called for support.

- Enable an e-mail notification with a custom message as pattern file was updated and a custom subject line as AV pattern file updated.
- Configure a list of fallback options as block.
- Configure the notification options for fallback blocking for virus detection. Configure a custom message for the fallback blocking action.
- Configure a notification for protocol-only virus detection.
- Configure scan options. For this example, configure the device to perform a TCP payload content size check before the scan request is sent.
- Configure the decompression layer limit. For this example configure the device to decompress three layers of nested compressed files before it executes the virus scan.
- Configure content size parameters as 20000.



NOTE: For SRX100, SRX110, SRX210, SRX220, and SRX240 devices the content size is 20000. For SRX650 devices the content size is 40,000. Platform support depends on the Junos OS release in your installation.

- Configure scan extension settings. The default list is junos-default-extension. For this example, you select extlist1, which you created as a custom object.
- Configure the scan mode setting to configure the device to use a custom extension list. Although you can choose to scan all files, for this example you select only files with the extensions that you specify.
- Enable intelligent prescreening and set its timeout setting to 1800 seconds and trickling setting (applicable only to HTTP) to 600 seconds. This means that if the device receives a packet within a 600-second period during a file transfer or while performing an antivirus scan, it should not time out.



NOTE: Intelligent prescreening is only intended for use with non-encoded traffic. It is not applicable for mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP) and HTTP POST.

The following example disables intelligent prescreening for the kasprof1 profile:

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
user@host# set profile kasprof1 scan-options no-intelligent-prescreening
```

- Configure the antivirus scanner to use MIME bypass lists and exception lists. You can use your own custom object lists, or you can use the default list that ships with the device called junos-default-bypass-mime. For this example, you use the avmime1 and ex-avmime1 lists.
- Configure the antivirus module to use URL bypass lists. If you are using a URL whitelist (valid only for HTTP traffic), this is a custom URL category that you have previously configured as a custom object. For this example, you enable the custurl1 bypass list.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus type kaspersky-lab-engine
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update interval
  120
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update
  email-notify admin-email administrator@example.net custom-message
  patternfilewasupdated custom-message-subject AVpatternfileupdated
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus type kaspersky-lab-engine
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  fallback-options content-size block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  fallback-options corrupt-file block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  fallback-options decompress-layer block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  fallback-options default block
```

```

set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  fallback-options engine-not-ready block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  fallback-options out-of-resources block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  fallback-options password-file block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  fallback-options timeout block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  fallback-options too-many-requests block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  notification-options fallback-block custom-message "Dropped due to fallback settings"
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  notification-options virus-detection type protocol-only
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  scan-options content-size-limit 20000
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  scan-options decompress-layer-limit 3
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  scan-options intelligent-prescreening
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  scan-options scan-extension extlist1
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  scan-options scan-mode by-extension
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
  scan-options timeout 1800
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1 trickling
  timeout 600
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus mime-whitelist list avmime1
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus mime-whitelist list avmime1 exception
  ex-avmime1
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus url-whitelist custurl1

```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure full antivirus feature profiles:

1. Select and configure the engine type.


```

[edit]
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus type kaspersky-lab-engine
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine
  pattern-update interval 120

```
2. Configure the device to notify a specified administrator when patterns are updated.


```

[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
user@host# set pattern-update email-notify admin-email
  administrator@example.net custom-message patternfilewasupdated
  custom-message-subject AVpatternfileupdated

```
3. Create a profile for the Kaspersky Lab engine and configure fallback options as block.


```

[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]

```

- ```
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options content-size block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options corrupt-file block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options decompress-layer block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options default block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options engine-not-ready block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options out-of-resources block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options password-file block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options timeout block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options too-many-requests block
```
4. Configure a custom notification for the fallback blocking action and send a notification.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
user@host# set profile kasprof1 notification-options fallback-block custom-message
"Dropped due to fallback settings"
```
  5. Configure a notification for protocol-only virus detection.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
user@host# set profile kasprof1 notification-options virus-detection type
protocol-only
```
  6. Configure content size parameter.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
user@host# set profile kasprof1 scan-options content-size-limit 20000
```
  7. Configure the decompression layer limit.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
user@host# set profile kasprof1 scan-options decompress-layer-limit 3
```
  8. Configure intelligent prescreening.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
user@host# set profile kasprof1 scan-options intelligent-prescreening
```
  9. Configure scan extension setting.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
user@host# set profile kasprof1 scan-options scan-extension extlist1
```
  10. Configure the scan mode setting.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
user@host# set profile kasprof1 scan-options scan-mode by-extension
```
  11. Configure the timeout setting.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
user@host# set profile kasprof1 scan-options timeout 1800
```
  12. Configure trickling setting.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
user@host# set profile kasprof1 trickling timeout 600
```
  13. Configure the antivirus scanner to use MIME bypass lists and exception lists.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]
user@host# set mime-whitelist list avmime1
user@host# set mime-whitelist list avmime1 exception ex-avmime1
```

14. Configure the antivirus module to use URL bypass lists.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]
user@host# set url-whitelist custurl1
```

**Results** From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm feature-profile anti-virus** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security utm feature-profile anti-virus
mime-whitelist {
 list avmime1;
 exception ex-avmime1;
}
url-whitelist custurl1;
kaspersky-lab-engine {
 pattern-update {
 email-notify {
 admin-email "administrator@example.net";
 custom-message patternfilewasupdated;
 custom-message-subject AVpatternfileupdated;
 }
 interval 120;
 }
 profile kasprof1 {
 fallback-options {
 default block;
 corrupt-file block;
 password-file block;
 decompress-layer block;
 content-size block;
 engine-not-ready block;
 timeout block;
 out-of-resources block;
 too-many-requests block;
 }
 scan-options {
 intelligent-prescreening;
 scan-mode by-extension;
 scan-extension extlist1;
 content-size-limit 20000;
 timeout 1800;
 decompress-layer-limit 3;
 }
 trickling timeout 600;
 notification-options {
 virus-detection {
 type protocol-only;
 custom-message ***virus-found***;
 }
 fallback-block {
 custom-message "Dropped due to fallback settings";
 }
 }
 }
}
```

```
}
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

## Verification

### Verifying the Configuration of Full Antivirus Feature Profile

**Purpose** Verify the full antivirus feature profile.

**Action** From operational mode, enter the **show configuration security utm** command.

#### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The full antivirus feature profile is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

#### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 72](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus UTM Policies on page 89](#)
- [Example: Attaching Full Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 91](#)

## Configuring Full Antivirus Feature Profiles (J-Web Procedure)

The full antivirus feature profile is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, after you have created your custom object, configure an antivirus feature profile:

1. Select **Configure>Security>UTM>Global options**.
2. In the Anti-Virus tab, next to **MIME whitelist**, select the custom object you created from the list.
3. Next to **Exception MIME whitelist**, select the custom object you created from the list.
4. Next to **URL Whitelist**, select the custom object you created from the list.
5. In the **Engine Type** section, select the type of engine you are using. For full antivirus protection, you should select **Kaspersky Lab**.
6. In the Kaspersky Lab Engine Option section, in the **Pattern update URL** box, enter the URL for the pattern database.



**NOTE:** The URL is `http://update.juniper-updates.net/AV/<device version>` and you should not change it.

7. Next to **Pattern update interval**, enter the time interval, in seconds, for automatically updating the pattern database in the box. The default interval is 60.

8. Select whether you want the pattern file to update automatically (**Auto update**) or not (**No Auto update**).
9. Click **OK** to save the selected values.
10. If the configuration item is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If it is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in a pop-up window that appears to discover why.
11. Under Security, in the left pane, select **Anti-Virus**.
12. In the right window, click **Add** to create a profile for the antivirus Kaspersky Lab Engine. (To edit an existing item, select it and click the **Edit** button.)
13. Next to **Profile name**, enter a unique name for this antivirus profile.
14. Select the **Profile Type**. In this case, select **Kaspersky**.
15. Next to **Trickling timeout**, enter timeout parameters.



**NOTE:** Trickling applies only to HTTP. HTTP trickling is a mechanism used to prevent the HTTP client or server from timing out during a file transfer or during antivirus scanning.

16. Next to Intelligent prescreening, select **Yes** or **No**.



**NOTE:** Intelligent prescreening is only intended for use with non-encoded traffic. It is not applicable for mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP, and HTTP POST).

17. In the Scan Options section, next to Intelligent prescreening, select **Yes** if you are using it.



**NOTE:** Intelligent prescreening is only intended for use with non-encoded traffic. It is not applicable for mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP, and HTTP POST).

18. Next to **Content Size Limit**, enter content size parameters. The content size check occurs before the scan request is sent. The content size refers to accumulated TCP payload size.
19. Next to **Scan engine timeout**, enter scanning timeout parameters.
20. Next to **Decompress Layer Limit**, enter decompression layer limit parameters.
21. In the Scan mode section, select either **Scan all files**, if you are scanning all content, or **Scan files with specified extension**, if you are scanning by file extensions.



**NOTE:** If you select Scan files with specified extension, you must select a filename extension list custom object from the Scan engine filename extension list that appears.

22. Select the **Fallback settings** tab.
23. Next to Default (fallback option), select **Log and permit** or **Block** from the list. In most cases, Block is the default fallback option.
24. Next to Corrupt File (fallback option), select **Log and permit** or **Block** from the list.
25. Next to Password File (fallback option), select **Log and permit** or **Block** from the list.
26. Next to Decompress Layer (fallback option), select **Log and permit** or **Block** from the list.
27. Next to Content Size (fallback option), select **Log and permit** or **Block** from the list.
28. Next to Engine Not Ready (fallback option), select **Log and permit** or **Block** from the list.
29. Next to Timeout (fallback option), select **Log and permit** or **Block** from the list.
30. Next to Out Of Resources (fallback option), select **Log and permit** or **Block** from the list.
31. Next to Too Many Request (fallback option), select **Log and permit** or **Block** from the list.
32. Select the **Notification options** tab.
33. In the Fallback block section, next to Notification type, select **Protocol Only** or **Message** to select the type of notification that is sent when a fallback option of block is triggered.
34. Next to Notify mail sender, select **Yes** or **No**.
35. If you selected Yes, next to **Custom Message**, enter text for the message body of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
36. Next to **Custom message subject**, enter text to appear in the subject line of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
37. In the Fallback non block section, next to Notify mail recipient, select **Yes** or **No**.
38. If you selected Yes, next to **Custom Message**, enter text for the message body of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
39. Next to **Custom message subject**, enter text to appear in the subject line of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
40. Select the **Notification options cont** tab.
41. In the Virus detection section, next to Notification type, select **Protocol Only** or **Message** to select the type of notification that is sent when a fallback option of block is triggered.
42. Next to Notify mail sender, select **Yes** or **No**.



43. If you selected Yes, next to **Custom Message**, enter text for the message body of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
44. Next to **Custom message subject**, enter text to appear in the subject line of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message). The limit is 255 characters.
45. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration, then click **Commit Options>Commit**.
46. If the configuration item is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If it is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in the pop-up window that appears to discover why.



**NOTE:** You create a separate antivirus profile for each antivirus protocol. These profiles may basically contain the same configuration information, but when you are creating your UTM policy for an antivirus profile, the UTM policy configuration page provides separate antivirus profile selection fields for each supported protocol.

Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The full antivirus feature profile is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

#### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Custom Objects \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 78](#)

## Example: Configuring Full Antivirus UTM Policies

The full antivirus feature profile is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to create a UTM policy to attach to a feature profile.

- [Requirements on page 89](#)
- [Overview on page 90](#)
- [Configuration on page 90](#)
- [Verification on page 90](#)

### Requirements

Before you begin, create an antivirus feature profile. See [“Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Feature Profiles” on page 80](#).

## Overview

In this example, you configure a full antivirus UTM policy called `utmp2` and attach the policy to an HTTP profile called `kasprofile1` HTTP.

## Configuration

### Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure a full antivirus UTM policy:

1. Create a UTM policy for HTTP antivirus scanning and attach the policy to the profile.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp2 anti-virus http-profile kasprofile1
```

2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

[edit]

```
user@host# commit
```

## Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security utm** command.

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The full antivirus feature profile is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 72](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Feature Profiles on page 80](#)
- [Example: Attaching Full Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 91](#)

## Configuring Full Antivirus UTM Policies (J-Web Procedure)

The full antivirus UTM policies is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, after you have created an antivirus feature profile, configure a UTM policy to which you can attach the feature profile:

1. Select **Configure>Security>Policy>UTM Policies**.
2. From the UTM policy configuration window, click **Add** to configure a UTM policy. This action takes you to the policy configuration pop-up window.
3. Select the **Main** tab in pop-up window.
4. In the **Policy name** box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy.
5. In the **Session per client limit** box, enter a session per client limit from 0 to 20000 for this UTM policy.

6. In the **Session per client over limit** list, select the action that the device should take when the session per client limit for this UTM policy is exceeded. Options include **Log and permit** and **Block**.
7. Select the **Anti-Virus profiles** tab in the pop-up window.
8. Select the appropriate profile you have configured from the list for the corresponding protocol listed.
9. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration, then click **Commit Options>Commit**.
10. If the policy is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If the profile is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in the pop-up window that appears to discover why.

**Release History Table**

| Release     | Description                                                                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The full antivirus UTM policies is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Custom Objects \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 78](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Feature Profiles \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 86](#)

## Example: Attaching Full Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies

The full antivirus UTM policies is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to attach a UTM policy to a security policy.

- [Requirements on page 91](#)
- [Overview on page 91](#)
- [Configuration on page 92](#)
- [Verification on page 92](#)

### Requirements

Before you begin, create a UTM policy. See “[Example: Configuring Full Antivirus UTM Policies](#)” on page 89.

### Overview

In this example, you attach the UTM policy called utmp2 to the security policy called p2.

## Configuration

### Step-by-Step Procedure

To attach a full antivirus UTM policy to a security policy:

1. Enable and configure the security policy.  

```
[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 match
application junos-http
```
2. Attach the UTM policy to the security policy.  

```
[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 then
permit application-services utm-policy utmp2
```
3. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.  

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

## Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security policies** command.

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The full antivirus UTM policies is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 72](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus UTM Policies on page 89](#)

## Attaching Full Antivirus UTM Policies to Security Policies (J-Web Procedure)

The full antivirus UTM policies is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, after you create a UTM policy, create a security policy and attach the UTM policy to the security policy:

1. Select **Configure>Security>Policy>FW Policies**.
2. From the Security Policy window, click **Add** to configure a security policy with UTM. This action takes you to the policy configuration pop-up window.
3. In the Policy tab, enter a name in the **Policy Name** box.
4. Next to **From Zone**, select a zone from the list.
5. Next to **To Zone**, select a zone from the list.

6. Choose a **Source Address**.
7. Choose a **Destination Address**.
8. Choose an application by selecting **junos-protocol** (for all protocols that support antivirus scanning) in the Application Sets box and clicking the —> button to move it to the Matched box.
9. Next to Policy Action, select **Permit**.



**NOTE:** When you select Permit for Policy Action, several additional fields become available in the Applications Services tab, including UTM Policy.

10. Select the **Application Services** tab in the pop-up window.
11. Next to **UTM Policy**, select the appropriate policy from the list. This action attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
12. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration, then click **Commit Options>Commit**.
13. If the policy is saved successfully, you receive a confirmation and you must click **OK** again. If the profile is not saved successfully, you can click **Details** in the pop-up window that appears to discover why.

You must activate your new policy to apply it.

#### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The full antivirus UTM policies is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

#### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Custom Objects \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 78](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Feature Profiles \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 86](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus UTM Policies \(J-Web Procedure\) on page 90](#)



# Configuring Full Antivirus Pattern Updates

- [Understanding Full Antivirus Pattern Updates on page 95](#)
- [Example: Configuring the Full Antivirus Pattern Update Server on page 96](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns \(J-Web\) on page 98](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns on page 98](#)
- [Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Full Antivirus Patterns \(CLI Procedure\) on page 99](#)

## Understanding Full Antivirus Pattern Updates

---

The full antivirus Pattern Updates is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, the full file-based antivirus protection signature database is called the Juniper Full antivirus database (downloaded by the pattern-update command). This database is different from the database used by express antivirus. It detects all destructive malicious code, including viruses (polymorphic and other advanced virus types), worms, Trojans, and malware.

Updates to the pattern file are added as new viruses are discovered. When Kaspersky Lab updates the signatures in its pattern database, the security device downloads these updates so that the antivirus scanner is using the latest, most up-to-date signatures when scanning traffic. The security device can perform these updates automatically (the default), or you can perform pattern update downloads manually.

The database pattern server is accessible through HTTP or HTTPS. By default, the antivirus module checks for database updates automatically every 60 minutes. You can change this interval and you can trigger updates manually, as well. The number of files that are downloaded during an update and the duration of the download process can vary.

A local copy of the pattern database is saved in persistent data storage (that is, the flash disk). If the device is rebooted, the local copy remains available for the antivirus scan engine to use during the antivirus scan engine initialization time, without the need for network access to the pattern database server.



**NOTE:** If the auto-update fails, the updater automatically retries to update three more times. If the database download continues to fail, the updater stops trying and waits for the next periodic update before trying again.



**NOTE:** Once your subscription expires, you have a 30 day grace period during which you can continue to update the antivirus pattern file. Once that grace period expires, the update server no longer permits antivirus pattern file updates.

#### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The full antivirus Pattern Updates is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

#### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Full Antivirus Pattern Update Configuration Overview on page 73](#)
- [Example: Configuring the Full Antivirus Pattern Update Server on page 96](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns \(J-Web\) on page 98](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns on page 98](#)
- [Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Full Antivirus Patterns \(CLI Procedure\) on page 99](#)

## Example: Configuring the Full Antivirus Pattern Update Server

The full antivirus Pattern Updates is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to configure the pattern-update server on the security device.

- [Requirements on page 96](#)
- [Overview on page 97](#)
- [Configuration on page 97](#)
- [Verification on page 97](#)

### Requirements

Before you begin:

- Obtain a valid antivirus scanner license. See [“Full Antivirus Protection Overview” on page 71](#).
- Get network connectivity and access to the pattern database server. See [“Understanding Full Antivirus Pattern Updates” on page 95](#).



- Configure your DNS settings and port settings (port 80) correctly. See *DNS Overview*.

## Overview

To configure the pattern-update server on the security device, enter the URL address of the pattern-update server.

By default, the Juniper-Kaspersky URL for full antivirus protection is `http://update.juniper-updates.net/AV/device-name`, where *device-name* is the name of your device.

## Configuration

### Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure the pattern-update server on a security device:

1. Specify the URL of the pattern-update server.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine
pattern-update url http://update.juniper-updates.net/AV/device-name
```



**NOTE:** Other than the platform name, you should not change this URL unless you are experiencing problems with it and have called for support.

2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

[edit]

```
user@host# commit
```

## Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security utm** command.

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The full antivirus Pattern Updates is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Pattern Update Configuration Overview on page 73](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns \(J-Web\) on page 98](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns on page 98](#)
- [Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Full Antivirus Patterns \(CLI Procedure\) on page 99](#)

## Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns (J-Web)

The full antivirus Pattern Updates is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, in this example, you configure the security device to update the pattern file automatically every 120 minutes. (The default antivirus pattern-update interval is 60 minutes.)

To automatically update antivirus patterns:

1. Select **Configure>UTM>Anti-Virus**.
2. Next to Interval, in the Kaspersky Lab Engine section, enter **120** in the box.
3. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration, then click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The full antivirus Pattern Updates is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Pattern Updates on page 95](#)
- [Full Antivirus Pattern Update Configuration Overview on page 73](#)
- [Example: Configuring the Full Antivirus Pattern Update Server on page 96](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns on page 98](#)
- [Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Full Antivirus Patterns \(CLI Procedure\) on page 99](#)

## Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns

The full antivirus Pattern Updates is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to update the pattern file automatically on a security device.

- [Requirements on page 98](#)
- [Overview on page 99](#)
- [Configuration on page 99](#)
- [Verification on page 99](#)

### Requirements

Before you begin:

- Obtain a valid antivirus scanner license. See [“Full Antivirus Protection Overview” on page 71](#).
- Get network connectivity and access to the pattern database server. See [“Understanding Full Antivirus Pattern Updates” on page 95](#).
- Configure your DNS settings and port settings (port 80) correctly. See [DNS Overview](#).

## Overview

In this example, you configure the security device to update the pattern file automatically every 120 minutes. (The default antivirus pattern-update interval is 60 minutes.)

## Configuration

### Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure the security device to update the pattern file automatically:

1. Set the interval.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine
pattern-update interval 120
```

2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

## Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security utm** command.

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The full antivirus Pattern Updates is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Pattern Update Configuration Overview on page 73](#)
- [Example: Configuring the Full Antivirus Pattern Update Server on page 96](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns \(J-Web\) on page 98](#)
- [Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Full Antivirus Patterns \(CLI Procedure\) on page 99](#)

## Manually Updating, Reloading, and Deleting Full Antivirus Patterns (CLI Procedure)

The Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to manually update antivirus patterns, enter the following CLI command:

```
user@host> request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update
```

To manually reload antivirus patterns, enter the following CLI command:

```
user@host> request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-reload
```

To manually delete antivirus patterns, enter the following CLI command:

```
user@host> request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-delete
```

You can update the Kaspersky antivirus signature database offline without using a direct Internet connection. This is required in some security installations and for sites that access the Internet through a proxy server.

To update the Kaspersky antivirus signature database offline, you must configure a local webserver.

To configure a webserver, use the following CLI statement.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update
url <http_server>
```

```
user@host# commit
```

To update the Kaspersky antivirus signature database, perform the following tasks:

1. Based on your hardware platform, enter the following URLs in your computer browser.
2. Copy all the files to a directory on your local webserver. You might want to use a download manager for your browser to get all the files more quickly.
3. Download the Kaspersky Lab engine from [http://update.juniper-updates.net/KAV\\_engine/](http://update.juniper-updates.net/KAV_engine/).
  - For JSR, the URL is [http://update.juniper-updates.net/KAV\\_engine/i386/](http://update.juniper-updates.net/KAV_engine/i386/).
  - For branch SRX Series devices, the URL is [http://update.juniper-updates.net/KAV\\_engine/octeon32/](http://update.juniper-updates.net/KAV_engine/octeon32/).
4. Copy all the files to the same directory on your local server.



**NOTE:** The Kaspersky Lab engine is automatically loadable. For updating the Kaspersky antivirus signature database offline, both pattern update files and Kaspersky Lab engine files must be placed in the same folder on the local webserver.

5. Set the directory as a sharepoint that can be accessed through HTTP from the SRX Series device.
6. Run the update command in the CLI.

```
user@host>request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update
```

#### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

#### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Pattern Updates on page 95](#)
- [Full Antivirus Pattern Update Configuration Overview on page 73](#)
- [Example: Configuring the Full Antivirus Pattern Update Server on page 96](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns \(J-Web\) on page 98](#)
- [Example: Automatically Updating Full Antivirus Patterns on page 98](#)



## CHAPTER 12

# Configuring File Scanning

- [Understanding the Full Antivirus Internal Scan Engine on page 103](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Mode Support on page 104](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus File Extension Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 105](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus File Extension Scanning on page 106](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Level Settings on page 107](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Scan Settings at Different Levels on page 108](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Intelligent Prescreening on page 110](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Intelligent Prescreening on page 110](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Content Size Limits on page 111](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Content Size Limits \(CLI Procedure\) on page 112](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Decompression Layer Limits on page 113](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Decompression Layer Limits \(CLI Procedure\) on page 114](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scanning Timeouts on page 114](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Scanning Timeouts \(CLI Procedure\) on page 115](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Session Throttling on page 115](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Scan Session Throttling \(CLI Procedure\) on page 116](#)

## Understanding the Full Antivirus Internal Scan Engine

---

The Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, the full file-based antivirus module is the software subsystem on the gateway device that scans specific Application Layer traffic to protect users from virus attacks and to prevent viruses from spreading. The antivirus software subsystem consists of a virus signature database, an application proxy, the scan manager, and the scan engine.

Kaspersky Lab provides the scan engine and it works in the following manner:

1. A client establishes a TCP connection with a server and then starts a transaction.
2. If the application protocol in question is marked for antivirus scanning, the traffic is forwarded to an application proxy for parsing.

3. When the scan request is sent, the scan engine scans the data by querying a virus pattern database.
4. The scan manager monitors antivirus scanning sessions, checking the properties of the data content against the existing antivirus settings.
5. After scanning has occurred, the result is then handled by the scan manager.

The Kaspersky Lab scan engine supports regular file scanning and script file scanning. With regular file scanning, the input object is a regular file. The engine matches the input content with all possible signatures. With script file scanning, the input object is a script file. It can be JavaScript, VBScript, mIRC script, bat scripts (DOS bat files), and other text scripts. The engine matches the input content only with signatures for script files. Script scanning is only applicable for HTML content over the HTTP protocol. There are two criteria for this scan type. First, the content-type field of this HTML document must be text or HTML. Second, there is no content encoding in the HTTP header. If those two criteria are met, an HTML parser is used to parse the HTML document for scripts.

#### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

#### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Level Settings on page 107](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Scan Settings at Different Levels on page 108](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Mode Support on page 104](#)

## Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Mode Support

The Kaspersky Lab scan engine is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, the Kaspersky Lab scan engine supports two modes of scanning:

- scan-all—This option tells the scan engine to scan all the data it receives.
- scan-by-extension—This option bases all scanning decisions on the file extensions found in the traffic in question.

When scanning content, you can use a file extension list to define a set of file extensions that are used in file extension scan mode (scan-by-extension). The antivirus module can then scan files with extensions on the scan-extension list. If an extension is not defined in an extension list, the file with that extension is not scanned in scan-by-extension mode. If there is no extension present, the file in question is scanned.

When using a file extension list to scan content, please note the following requirements:



- File extension entries are case-insensitive.
- The maximum length of the file extension list name is 29 bytes.
- The maximum length of each file extension entry is 15 bytes.
- The maximum entry number in a file extension list is 255.

Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Kaspersky Lab scan engine is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

#### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding the Full Antivirus Internal Scan Engine on page 103](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Level Settings on page 107](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Scan Settings at Different Levels on page 108](#)

## Configuring Full Antivirus File Extension Scanning (CLI Procedure)

The Kaspersky Lab scan is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to configure file-extension scanning, use the following CLI configuration statements:

```
security utm {
 custom-objects {
 filename-extension { ; set of list
 name extension-list-name; #mandatory
 value windows-extension-string;
 }
 }
}

security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile name {
 scan-options {
 scan-extension ext-list
 }
}
```

Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                        |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Kaspersky Lab scan is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

#### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus File Extension Scanning on page 106](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Mode Support on page 104](#)

## Example: Configuring Full Antivirus File Extension Scanning

---

The Kaspersky Lab scan is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to configure full antivirus file extension scanning.

- [Requirements on page 106](#)
- [Overview on page 106](#)
- [Configuration on page 106](#)
- [Verification on page 107](#)

### Requirements

Before you begin, decide the mode of scanning you require. See "[Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Mode Support](#)" on page 104.

### Overview

In this example, you perform the following tasks:

1. Create a file called extlist1 for the kasprof1 profile, and add extensions such as .zip, .js, and .vbs to the extlist1.
2. Configure the scan mode setting. You can choose to scan all files or to scan only the files that have the extensions that you specify. This example uses the scan by-extension option to configure the device to use the extlist1 file.

### Configuration

#### Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure full antivirus file extension scanning:

1. Create a extension for the list and add extensions to the filename extension list.  

```
[edit]
user@host# set security utm custom-objects filename-extension extlist1 value [zip
js vbs]
```
2. Configure scan extension settings.  

```
[edit]
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile
kasprof1 scan-options scan-extension extlist1
```
3. Configure the scan mode setting.  

```
[edit]
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile
kasprof1 scan-options scan-mode by-extension
```
4. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.  

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

## Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security utm** command.

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                        |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Kaspersky Lab scan is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus File Extension Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 105](#)

## Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Level Settings

The Kaspersky Lab scan is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, the antivirus module allows you to configure scanning options on a global level, on a UTM profile level, or on a firewall policy level. Each configuration level has the following implications:

- Global antivirus settings—Settings are applied to all antivirus sessions. Global settings are general overall configurations for the antivirus module or settings that are not specific for profiles.
- Profile-based settings—Antivirus settings are different for different protocols within the same policy.
- Policy-based settings—Antivirus settings are different for different policies. Policy-based antivirus settings are applied to all scan-specified traffic defined in a firewall policy.

The majority of antivirus settings are configured within an antivirus profile, bound to specified protocols, and used by designated policies. These UTM policies are then applied to the traffic according to firewall policies. If a firewall policy with an antivirus setting matches the properties of a traffic flow, the antivirus setting is applied to the traffic session. Therefore, you can apply different antivirus settings for different protocols and for different traffic sessions.

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                        |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Kaspersky Lab scan is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding the Full Antivirus Internal Scan Engine on page 103](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Scan Settings at Different Levels on page 108](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Mode Support on page 104](#)

## Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Scan Settings at Different Levels

---

The Kaspersky Lab scan is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to configure full antivirus scan settings at different levels.

- [Requirements on page 108](#)
- [Overview on page 108](#)
- [Configuration on page 108](#)
- [Verification on page 109](#)

### Requirements

Before you begin, decide the type of scanning option you require. See “[Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Level Settings](#)” on page 107.

### Overview

In this example, you define antivirus scanning options on any of the following levels:

- Global level
- UTM profile level using the kasprof1 UTM profile
- Firewall policy level using the p1 UTM policy

### Configuration

**CLI Quick Configuration** To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update interval 20
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
 fallback-options default block
set utm-policy p1 anti-virus http-profile av-profile
```

**Step-by-Step Procedure** The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure antivirus scanning options at different levels:

1. Configure scanning options at the global level.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update
 interval 20
```

2. Configure scanning options at the UTM profile level.

```
[edit security utm]
```

```
user@host# set feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
fallback-options default block
```

3. Configure scanning options at the UTM policy level.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set utm-policy p1 anti-virus http-profile av-profile
```

**Results** From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

For brevity, this **show** command output includes only the configuration that is relevant to this example. Any other configuration on the system has been replaced with ellipses (...).

```
[edit]
user@host# show security utm
...
 utm-policy p1 {
 anti-virus {
 http-profile av-profile
 ftp {
 upload-profile av-profile
 download-profile av-profile
 }
 }
 }
 ...
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

## Verification

### Verifying Scan Settings at Different Levels

**Purpose** Verify the scan settings at different levels.

**Action** From operational mode, enter the **show configuration security utm** command.

#### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                        |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Kaspersky Lab scan is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

#### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding the Full Antivirus Internal Scan Engine on page 103](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Mode Support on page 104](#)

## Understanding Full Antivirus Intelligent Prescreening

The Intelligent prescreening is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, by default, intelligent prescreening is enabled to improve antivirus scanning performance. The antivirus module generally begins to scan data after the gateway device has received all the packets of a file. Intelligent prescreening tells the antivirus module to begin scanning a file much earlier. In this case, the scan engine uses the first packet or the first several packets to determine if a file could possibly contain malicious code. The scan engine does a quick check on these first packets and if it finds that it is unlikely that the file is infected, it then decides that it is safe to bypass the normal scanning procedure.



**NOTE:** Intelligent prescreening is only intended for use with non-encoded traffic. It is not applicable for MIME encoded traffic, mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP) and HTTP POST.

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                              |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Intelligent prescreening is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Intelligent Prescreening on page 110](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Mode Support on page 104](#)

## Example: Configuring Full Antivirus Intelligent Prescreening

The Intelligent prescreening is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to configure full antivirus intelligent prescreening. By default, intelligent prescreening is enabled to improve antivirus scanning performance.

- [Requirements on page 110](#)
- [Overview on page 111](#)
- [Configuration on page 111](#)
- [Verification on page 111](#)

### Requirements

Before you begin, understand how intelligent prescreening enables the improvement of antivirus scanning performance. See [“Understanding Full Antivirus Intelligent Prescreening” on page 110](#).

## Overview

In this example, you perform the following tasks:

- Enable intelligent prescreening for the `kasprof1` profile.
- Disable intelligent prescreening for the `kasprof1` profile.

## Configuration

### Step-by-Step Procedure

To enable or disable full antivirus intelligent prescreening:

1. Enable intelligent prescreening for the `kasprof1` profile.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile
kasprof1 scan-options intelligent-prescreening
```

2. Disable intelligent prescreening for the `kasprof1` profile.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile
kasprof1 scan-options no-intelligent-prescreening
```



**NOTE:** Intelligent prescreening is intended only for use with non-encoded traffic. It is not applicable to mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP) or HTTP POST.

3. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

[edit]

```
user@host# commit
```

## Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security utm** command.

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                              |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Intelligent prescreening is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Level Settings on page 107](#)

## Understanding Full Antivirus Content Size Limits

The Content Size Limit is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, due to resource constraints, there is a default, device-dependent

limit on maximum content size for the database. The content size value is configurable. There is also a lower and upper limit for maximum content size. (This range is device dependent and is not configurable.)

The content size check occurs before the scan request is sent. The exact timing of this is protocol dependent. If the protocol header contains an accurate content length field, the content size check takes place when the content length field is extracted during header parsing. The content size usually refers to file size. If there is no content length field, the size is checked while the antivirus module is receiving packets. The content size, in this case, refers to accumulated TCP payload size.



**NOTE:** This setting can be used in all protocols.

#### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                        |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Content Size Limit is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

#### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Content Size Limits \(CLI Procedure\) on page 112](#)

## Configuring Full Antivirus Content Size Limits (CLI Procedure)

The Content Size Limit is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to configure content size limits, use the following CLI configuration statements:

```
security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile name {
 scan-options {
 content-size-limit KB;
 }
}
```

#### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                        |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Content Size Limit is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

#### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Content Size Limits on page 111](#)



## Understanding Full Antivirus Decompression Layer Limits

The Decompression Layer Limit is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, the decompression layer limit specifies how many layers of nested compressed files and files with internal extractable objects, such as archive files (tar), MS Word and PowerPoint files, the internal antivirus scanner can decompress before it executes the virus scan. For example, if a message contains a compressed .zip file that contains another compressed .zip file, there are two compression layers. Decompressing both files requires a decompress layer setting of 2.

It is worth noting that during the transfer of data, some protocols use content encoding. The antivirus scan engine must decode this layer, which is considered a decompression level, before it scans for viruses.

There are three kinds of compressed data:

- compressed file (zip, rar, gzip)
- encoded data (MIME)
- packaged data (OLE, .CAP, .MSI, .TAR, .EML)

A decompression layer could be a layer of a zipped file or an embedded object in packaged data. The antivirus engine scans each layer before unpacking the next layer, until it either reaches the user-configured decompress limit, reaches the device decompress layer limit, finds a virus or other malware, or decompresses the data completely, whichever comes first.

As the virus signature database becomes larger and the scan algorithms become more sophisticated, the scan engine has the ability to look deeper into the data for embedded malware. As a result, it can uncover more layers of compressed data. The Juniper Networks device's level of security is limited by decompress limit, which is based on the memory allocated to the security service. If a virus is not found within the decompress limit, the user has an option to either pass or drop the data.



**NOTE:** This setting can be used in all protocols.

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Decompression Layer Limit is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Decompression Layer Limits \(CLI Procedure\) on page 114](#)

## Configuring Full Antivirus Decompression Layer Limits (CLI Procedure)

The Decompression Layer Limit is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to configure decompression layer limits, use the following CLI configuration statements:

```
security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile name {
 scan-options {
 decompress-layer-limit number
 }
}
```

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Decompression Layer Limit is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Decompression Layer Limits on page 113](#)

## Understanding Full Antivirus Scanning Timeouts

The Scanning timeout parameter is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, the scanning timeout value includes the time frame from when the scan request is generated to when the scan result is returned by the scan engine. The time range can be 1 to 1800 seconds. By default, it is 180 seconds.



**NOTE:** This timeout parameter is used by all supported protocols. Each protocol can have a different timeout value.

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Scanning timeout parameter is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Scanning Timeouts \(CLI Procedure\) on page 115](#)

## Configuring Full Antivirus Scanning Timeouts (CLI Procedure)

The Scanning timeout parameter is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to configure scanning timeouts, use the following CLI configuration statements:

```
security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile name {
 scan-options {
 timeout-value seconds {
 }
 }
}
```

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Scanning timeout parameter is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scanning Timeouts on page 114](#)

## Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Session Throttling

The Scan session Throttling is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, in an attempt to consume all available resources and hinder the ability of the scan engine to scan other traffic, a malicious user might generate a large amount of traffic all at once. To prevent such activity from succeeding, a session throttle is imposed for antivirus resources, thereby restricting the amount of traffic a single source can consume at one time. The limit is an integer with 100 as the default setting. This integer refers to the maximum allowed sessions from a single source. You may change this default limit, but understand that if this limit is set high, that is comparable to no limit.

Over-limit is a fallback setting for the connection-per-client limit. The default behavior of over-limit is to block sessions. This is a per-policy setting. You can specify different settings for different UTM policies.

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Scan session Throttling is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Configuring Full Antivirus Scan Session Throttling \(CLI Procedure\) on page 116](#)

## Configuring Full Antivirus Scan Session Throttling (CLI Procedure)

The Scan session Throttling is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to configure scan session throttling, use the following CLI configuration statements:

```
security utm utm-policy name
 traffic-options {
 sessions-per-client {
 limit number;
 over-limit { log-and-permit | block }
 }
 }
```

Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Scan session Throttling is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Session Throttling on page 115](#)

# Configuring Scan Results and Fallback Options

- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Result Handling on page 117](#)
- [Monitoring Antivirus Scan Engine Status on page 118](#)
- [Monitoring Antivirus Session Status on page 119](#)
- [Monitoring Antivirus Scan Results on page 119](#)
- [Understanding Antivirus Scanning Fallback Options on page 122](#)
- [Example: Configuring Antivirus Scanning Fallback Options on page 123](#)

## Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Result Handling

---

The Full Antivirus Scan Result Handling is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, different antivirus scan results are handled in different manners. For example, if a scan result is clean, the traffic is forwarded to the receiver. If the scan result is infected, the traffic is dropped. If the scan results in an error, the result handling depends on the cause of the failure and the configuration (fallback settings).

The following is a list of actions based on scan results:

- Scan Result = Pass

The scan result handling action is to pass the message. In this case, no virus is detected and no error code is returned. Or, an error code is returned, but the fallback option for this error code is set to log-and-permit.

- Scan Result = Block

The scan result handling action is to block the message. In this case, either a virus is detected or an error code is returned and the fallback option for this error code is BLOCK.

**Release History Table**

| Release     | Description                                                                                         |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Full Antivirus Scan Result Handling is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Level Settings on page 107](#)

## Monitoring Antivirus Scan Engine Status

**Purpose** The Monitoring Antivirus Scan Engine Status is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, using the CLI, you can view the following scan engine status items:

Antivirus license key status

- View license expiration dates.

Scan engine status and settings

- View last action result.
- View default file extension list.

Antivirus pattern update server settings

- View update URL (HTTP or HTTPS-based).
- View update interval.

Antivirus pattern database status

- View auto update status.
- View last result of database loading.
- If the download completes, view database version timestamp virus record number.
- If the download fails, view failure reason.

**Action** In the CLI, enter the `user@host> show security utm anti-virus status` command.

Example status result:

```

AV Key Expire Date: 03/01/2010 00:00:00
Update Server: http://update.juniper-updates.net/AV/device-name
interval: 60 minutes
auto update status: next update in 12 minutes
last result: new database loaded
AV signature version: 12/21/2008 00:35 GMT, virus records: 154018
Scan Engine Info: last action result: No error(0x00000000)

```

**Release History Table**

| Release     | Description                                                                                             |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Monitoring Antivirus Scan Engine Status is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 72](#)
- [Monitoring Antivirus Session Status on page 119](#)
- [Monitoring Antivirus Scan Results on page 119](#)

## Monitoring Antivirus Session Status

---

**Purpose** The Monitoring Antivirus Session Status is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, using the CLI, you can view the following session status items:

Antivirus session status displays a snapshot of current antivirus sessions. It includes

- Maximum supported antivirus session numbers.
- Total allocated antivirus session numbers.
- Total freed antivirus session numbers.
- Current active antivirus session numbers.

**Action** In the CLI, enter the **user@host> show security utm session status** command.

**Release History Table**

| Release     | Description                                                                                         |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Monitoring Antivirus Session Status is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 72](#)
- [Monitoring Antivirus Scan Engine Status on page 118](#)
- [Monitoring Antivirus Scan Results on page 119](#)

## Monitoring Antivirus Scan Results

---

**Purpose** The Monitoring Antivirus Scan Results are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, view statistics for antivirus requests, scan results, and fallback counters.

Scan requests provide

- The total number of scan request forwarded to the engine.
- The number of scan request being pre-windowed.

- The number of scan requests using scan-all mode.
- The number of scan requests using scan-by-extension mode.

Scan code counters provide

- Number of clean files.
- Number of infected files.
- Number of password protected files.
- Number of decompress layers.
- Number of corrupt files.
- When the engine is out of resources.
- When there is an internal error.

Fallback applied status provides either a log-and-permit or block result when the following has occurred

- Scan engine not ready.
- Maximum content size reached.
- Too many requests.
- Password protected file found.
- Decompress layer too large.
- Corrupt file found.
- Timeout occurred.
- Out of resources.
- Other.

**Action** To view antivirus scan results using the CLI editor, enter the `user@host> show security utm anti-virus statistics status` command.

To view antivirus scan results using J-Web:

1. Select **Monitor>Security>UTM>Anti-Virus**.

The following information becomes viewable in the right pane.

Antivirus license key status

- View license expiration dates.

Antivirus pattern update server settings

- View update URL (HTTP or HTTPS-based).
- View update interval.



#### Antivirus pattern database status

- View auto update status.
- View last result of database loading.
- If the download completes, view database version timestamp virus record number.
- If the download fails, view failure reason.

#### Antivirus statistics provide

- The number of scan request being pre-windowed.
- The total number of scan request forwarded to the engine.
- The number of scan requests using scan-all mode.
- The number of scan requests using scan-by-extension mode.

#### Scan code counters provide

- Number of clean files.
- Number of infected files.
- Number of password protected files.
- Number of decompress layers.
- Number of corrupt files.
- When the engine is out of resources.
- When there is an internal error.

Fallback applied status provides either a log-and-permit or block result when the following has occurred

- Scan engine not ready.
  - Password protected file found.
  - Decompress layer too large.
  - Corrupt file found.
  - Out of resources.
  - Timeout occurred.
  - Maximum content size reached.
  - Too many requests.
  - Other.
2. You can click the **Clear Anti-Virus Statistics** button to clear all current viewable statistics and begin collecting new statistics.

**Release History Table**

| Release     | Description                                                                                        |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Monitoring Antivirus Scan Results are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

**Related Documentation** • [Monitoring Antivirus Session Status on page 119](#)

## Understanding Antivirus Scanning Fallback Options

The Antivirus Scanning Fallback Options are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, fallback options tell the system how to handle the errors returned by either the scan engine or the scan manager. The following is a list of possible errors:

- Scan engine is not ready (engine-not-ready)  
The scan engine is initializing itself, for example, loading the signature database. During this phase, it is not ready to scan a file. A file could either pass or be blocked according to this setting.
- Corrupt file (corrupt-file)  
Corrupt file is the error returned by the scan engine when engine detects a corrupted file.
- Decompression layer (decompress-layer)  
Decompress layer error is the error returned by the scan engine when the scanned file has too many compression layers.
- Password protected file (password-file)  
Password protected file is the error returned by the scan engine when the scanned file is protected by a password.
- Max content size (content-size)  
If the content size exceeds a set limit, the content is passed or blocked depending on the max-content-size fallback option.
- Too many requests (too-many-requests)  
If the total number of messages received concurrently exceeds the device limits, the content is passed or blocked depending on the too-many-request fallback option. (The allowed request limit is not configurable.)
- Timeout  
Scanning a complex file could consume resources and time. If the time it is taking to scan exceeds the timeout setting in the antivirus profile, the processing is aborted and the content is passed or blocked without completing the virus checking. The decision is made based on the timeout fallback option.
- Out of resources (out-of-resources)

Virus scanning requires a great deal of memory and CPU resources. Due to resource constraints, memory allocation requests can be denied by the system. This failure could be returned by either scan engine (as a scan-code) or scan manager. When out-of-resources occurs, scanning is aborted.

- Default

All the errors other than those in the above list fall into this category. This could include either unhandled system exceptions (internal errors) or other unknown errors.

The default fallback action for all the error types is log-and-permit.

**Release History Table**

| Release     | Description                                                                                          |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Antivirus Scanning Fallback Options are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Example: Configuring Antivirus Scanning Fallback Options on page 123](#)

## Example: Configuring Antivirus Scanning Fallback Options

The Antivirus Scanning Fallback options are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to configure antivirus scanning fallback options.

- [Requirements on page 123](#)
- [Overview on page 123](#)
- [Configuration on page 124](#)
- [Verification on page 125](#)

### Requirements

Before you begin, understand the possible error types and the default fallback actions for those error types. See [“Understanding Antivirus Scanning Fallback Options” on page 122](#).

### Overview

In this example, you configure a feature profile called kasprof, and set the fallback scanning options for default, content-size, corrupt-file, decompress-layer, engine-not-ready, out-of-resources, password-file, timeout, too-many-requests, as block.



**NOTE:** The command for changing the URL for the pattern database is:

```
[edit]
user@host# edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
user@host# set pattern-update url
http://update.juniper-updates.net/AV/<device-name>
```

The default URL is `http://update.juniper-updates.net/AV/<device-version>`. You should not change this URL unless you are experiencing problems with it and have called for support.

## Configuration

### CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus type kaspersky-lab-engine
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
 fallback-options content-size block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
 fallback-options corrupt-file block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
 fallback-options decompress-layer block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
 fallback-options default block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
 fallback-options engine-not-ready block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
 fallback-options out-of-resources block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
 fallback-options password-file block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
 fallback-options timeout block
set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile kasprof1
 fallback-options too-many-requests block
```

### Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure scanning fallback options:

1. Select and configure the engine type.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus type kaspersky-lab-engine
```

2. Create a profile for the Kaspersky Lab engine and configure a list of fallback options as block or log-and-permit.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
```

```

user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options content-size block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options corrupt-file block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options decompress-layer block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options default block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options engine-not-ready block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options out-of-resources block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options password-file block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options timeout block
user@host# set profile kasprof1 fallback-options too-many-requests block

```

**Results** From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm feature-profile anti-virus** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```

[edit]
user@host#show security utm feature-profile anti-virus
kaspersky-lab-engine {
 profile kasprof1 {
 fallback-options {
 default block;
 corrupt-file block;
 password-file block;
 decompress-layer block;
 content-size block;
 engine-not-ready block;
 timeout block;
 out-of-resources block;
 too-many-requests block;
 }
 }
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

## Verification

### Verifying the Antivirus Scanning Fallback Options

**Purpose** Verify the antivirus scanning fallback options.

**Action** From operational mode, enter the **show configuration security utm** command.

#### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                                          |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Antivirus Scanning Fallback options are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Level Settings on page 107](#)



# Configuring Application Protocol Scanning

- [Understanding Full Antivirus Application Protocol Scanning on page 127](#)
- [Understanding HTTP Scanning on page 128](#)
- [Enabling HTTP Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 129](#)
- [Understanding FTP Antivirus Scanning on page 130](#)
- [Enabling FTP Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 131](#)
- [Understanding SMTP Antivirus Scanning on page 131](#)
- [Enabling SMTP Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 133](#)
- [Understanding POP3 Antivirus Scanning on page 133](#)
- [Enabling POP3 Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 135](#)
- [Understanding IMAP Antivirus Scanning on page 135](#)
- [Enabling IMAP Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 137](#)

## Understanding Full Antivirus Application Protocol Scanning

---

The Full Antivirus Application Protocol Scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, you can turn antivirus scanning on and off on a per protocol basis. If scanning for a protocol is disabled in an antivirus profile, there is no application intelligence for this protocol. Therefore, in most cases, traffic using this protocol is not scanned. But if the protocol in question is based on another protocol for which scanning is enabled in an antivirus profile, then the traffic is scanned as that enabled protocol.

The internal antivirus scan engine supports scanning for specific Application Layer transactions allowing you to select the content (HTTP, FTP, SMTP, POP3, or IMAP traffic) to scan. For each content type that you are scanning, you have different configuration options.

Profile-based settings, including enable/disable, scan-mode, and scan result handling settings, may not be applicable to all supported protocols. The following table lists profile-based settings and their protocol support.

**Table 5: Supported Profile-based Settings By Protocol**

| Profile Setting                                                                                                  | Protocol Support                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Enable or disable scanning on per protocol basis                                                                 | All protocols support this feature |
| <a href="#">“Understanding Full Antivirus Scan Mode Support” on page 104</a> , including file extension scanning | All protocols support this feature |
| <a href="#">“Understanding Full Antivirus Content Size Limits” on page 111</a>                                   | All protocols support this feature |
| <a href="#">“Understanding Full Antivirus Decompression Layer Limits” on page 113</a>                            | All protocols support this feature |
| <a href="#">“Understanding Full Antivirus Scanning Timeouts” on page 114</a>                                     | All protocols support this feature |
| <a href="#">“Understanding HTTP Tricking” on page 143</a>                                                        | HTTP only                          |
| <a href="#">“Understanding Antivirus Scanning Fallback Options” on page 122</a>                                  | All protocols support this feature |
| Protocol specific messages                                                                                       | All protocols support this feature |
| <a href="#">“Understanding E-Mail Virus-Detected Notifications” on page 146</a>                                  | SMTP, POP3, and IMAP only          |
| <a href="#">“Understanding Custom Message Virus-Detected Notifications” on page 147</a>                          | All protocols support this feature |

**Release History Table**

| Release     | Description                                                                                                  |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Full Antivirus Application Protocol Scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding HTTP Scanning on page 128](#)
- [Enabling HTTP Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 129](#)
- [Understanding Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications on page 145](#)

## Understanding HTTP Scanning

The HTTP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, if antivirus scanning is enabled for Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) traffic in a content security profile, TCP traffic to defined HTTP service ports (generally port 80) is monitored. For HTTP traffic, the security device scans both HTTP responses and requests (get, post, and put commands).





**NOTE:** For HTTP antivirus scanning, both HTTP 1.0 and 1.1 are supported. If the protocol version is HTTP 0.x, the antivirus scanner attempts to scan the traffic. Unknown protocols are bypassed. For example, some application protocols use HTTP as the transport but do not comply with HTTP 1.0 or 1.1. These are considered unknown protocols and are not scanned.

This is a general description of how HTTP traffic is intercepted, scanned, and acted upon by the antivirus scanner:

1. An HTTP client sends an HTTP request to a webserver or a webserver responds to an HTTP request.
2. The security device intercepts the request and passes the data to the antivirus scanner, which scans it for viruses.
3. After completing the scan, the device follows one of two courses:
  - If there is no virus, the device forwards the request to the webserver.
  - If there is a virus, the device drops the request and sends an HTTP message reporting the infection to the client.

With script-only scanning, the input object is a script file. It can be JavaScript, VBScript, mIRC script, bat scripts (DOS bat files) and other text scripts. The engine matches the input content only with signatures for script files. Script scanning is applicable only for HTML content over the HTTP protocol. There are two criteria for this scan-type. First, the content-type field of this HTML document must be text or HTML. Second, there is no content encoding in the HTTP header. If those two criteria are met, an HTML parser is used to parse the HTML document.

**Release History Table**

| Release     | Description                                                                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The HTTP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Application Protocol Scanning on page 127](#)
- [Enabling HTTP Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 129](#)

## Enabling HTTP Scanning (CLI Procedure)

The HTTP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to enable antivirus scanning for HTTP traffic, enter the following CLI configuration statement:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy policy-name anti-virus http
```

**Release History Table**

| Release     | Description                                                                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The HTTP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Full Antivirus Application Protocol Scanning on page 127](#)
- [Understanding HTTP Scanning on page 128](#)

## Understanding FTP Antivirus Scanning

The FTP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, if antivirus scanning is enabled for File Transfer Protocol (FTP) traffic in a content security profile, the security device monitors the control channel and, when it detects one of the FTP commands for transferring data, it scans the data sent over the data channel.

This is a general description of how FTP traffic is intercepted, scanned, and acted upon by the antivirus scanner:

1. A local FTP client opens an FTP control channel to an FTP server and requests the transfer of some data.
2. The FTP client and server negotiate a data channel over which the server sends the requested data. The security device intercepts the data and passes it to the antivirus scan engine, which scans it for viruses.
3. After completing the scan, the device follows one of two courses:
  - If there is no virus, the device forwards the data to the client.
  - If there is a virus, the device replaces the data with a drop message in the data channel and sends a message reporting the infection in the control channel.

**Release History Table**

| Release     | Description                                                                            |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The FTP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Enabling FTP Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 131](#)

## Enabling FTP Antivirus Scanning (CLI Procedure)

The FTP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to enable antivirus scanning for File Transfer Protocol (FTP) traffic, enter the following CLI configuration statement:

```
user@host# security utm utm-policy policy-name anti-virus ftp
```



**NOTE:** In order to scan FTP traffic, the FTP ALG must be enabled.

### Release History Table

| Release     | Description                                                                            |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The FTP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding FTP Antivirus Scanning on page 130](#)

## Understanding SMTP Antivirus Scanning

The SMTP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, if SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) antivirus scanning is enabled in a content security profile, the security device redirects traffic from local SMTP clients to the antivirus scanner before sending it to the local mail server.



**NOTE:** Chunking is an alternative to the data command. It provides a mechanism to transmit a large message in small chunks. It is not supported. Messages using chunking are bypassed and are not scanned.

This is a general description of how SMTP traffic is intercepted, scanned, and acted upon by the antivirus scanner:

1. An SMTP client sends an e-mail message to a local mail server or a remote mail server forwards an e-mail message via SMTP to the local mail server.
2. The security device intercepts the e-mail message and passes the data to the antivirus scanner, which scans it for viruses.
3. After completing the scan, the device follows one of two courses:
  - If there is no virus, the device forwards the message to the local server.
  - If there is a virus, the device sends a replacement message to the client.

This topic includes the following sections:

- [Understanding SMTP Antivirus Mail Message Replacement on page 132](#)
- [Understanding SMTP Antivirus Sender Notification on page 132](#)
- [Understanding SMTP Antivirus Subject Tagging on page 133](#)

## Understanding SMTP Antivirus Mail Message Replacement

If the antivirus scanner finds a virus in an e-mail message, the original message is dropped, the message body is truncated, and the content is replaced by a message that may appear as follows:

nContent-Type: text/plain

Your mail <src\_ip> : <src\_port> — <dst\_port>: <dst\_port> contains contaminated file <filename> with virus <virusname>, so it is dropped.

If a scan error is returned and the fail mode is set to drop, the original message is dropped and the entire message body is truncated. The content is replaced by a message that may appear as follows:

nContent-Type: text/plain

Your mail <src\_ip> : <src\_port> — <dst\_port>: <dst\_port> is dropped for <reason>.

## Understanding SMTP Antivirus Sender Notification

If **notify-sender-on-virus** is set and the message is dropped due to a detected virus, an e-mail is sent to the mail sender. The content of the notification may appear as follows:

From: <admin>@<gateway\_ip>

To: <sender\_e-mail>

Subject: Mail Delivery Failure

This message is created automatically by mail delivery software. A message that you sent could not be delivered to one or more of its recipients for the reason:

<src\_ip> : <src\_port> — <dst\_port>: <dst\_port> <ENVID> contaminated file <filename> with virus <virusname>.

e-mail Header is:

<header of scanned e-mail>

If **notify-sender-on-error-drop** is set and the message is dropped due to a scan error, an e-mail is sent to the mail sender of the scanned message. The content of the e-mail may appear as follows:

From: <admin>@<gateway\_ip>

To: <sender\_e-mail>

Subject: Mail Delivery Failure

This message is created automatically by mail delivery software. A message that you sent could not be delivered to one or more of its recipients for the reason:

<src\_ip> : <src\_port> — <dst\_port>: <dst\_port> <ENVID> <reason>.

e-mail Header is:

<header of scanned e-mail>



**NOTE:** For information on the ENVID parameter, refer to RFC 3461.

---

## Understanding SMTP Antivirus Subject Tagging

If a scan error is returned and the fail mode is set to **pass**, the antivirus module passes the message through to the server. If **notify-recipient-on-error-pass** is set, the following string is appended to the end of the subject field:

(No virus check: <reason>)

| Release History Table | Release     | Description                                                                             |
|-----------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                       | 15.1X49-D10 | The SMTP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Enabling SMTP Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 133](#)

## Enabling SMTP Antivirus Scanning (CLI Procedure)

The SMTP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to enable antivirus scanning for SMTP traffic, enter the following CLI configuration statement:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy policy-name anti-virus smtp-profile
```

| Release History Table | Release     | Description                                                                             |
|-----------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                       | 15.1X49-D10 | The SMTP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding SMTP Antivirus Scanning on page 131](#)

## Understanding POP3 Antivirus Scanning

The POP3 antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, if Post Office Protocol 3 (POP3) antivirus scanning is enabled in a content security profile, the security device redirects traffic from a local mail server to antivirus scanner before sending it to the local POP3 client.

This is a general description of how POP3 traffic is intercepted, scanned, and acted upon by the antivirus scanner.

1. The POP3 client downloads an e-mail message from the local mail server.
2. The security device intercepts the e-mail message and passes the data to the antivirus scanner, which scans it for viruses.

3. After completing the scan, the security device follows one of two courses:
  - If there is no virus, the device forwards the message to the client.
  - If there is a virus, the device sends a message reporting the infection to the client.



NOTE: See “Understanding Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications” on page 145 for information on protocol-only notifications for IMAP.

This topic includes the following sections:

- [Understanding POP3 Antivirus Mail Message Replacement on page 134](#)
- [Understanding POP3 Antivirus Sender Notification on page 134](#)
- [Understanding POP3 Antivirus Subject Tagging on page 135](#)

## Understanding POP3 Antivirus Mail Message Replacement

If the antivirus scanner finds a virus in an e-mail message, the original message is dropped, the message body is truncated, and the content is replaced by a message that may appear as follows:

```
nContent-Type: text/plain
Your mail <src_ip> : <src_port> — <dst_port>: <dst_port> contains contaminated file
<filename> with virus <virusname>, so it is dropped.
```

## Understanding POP3 Antivirus Sender Notification

If **notify-sender-on-virus** is set and the message is dropped due to a detected virus, an e-mail is sent to the mail sender.

```
From: <admin>@<gateway_ip>
To: <sender_e-mail>
Subject: Mail Delivery Failure
This message is created automatically by mail delivery software. A message that you sent
could not be delivered to one or more of its recipients for the reason:
<src_ip> : <src_port> — <dst_port>: <dst_port> contaminated file <filename> with virus
<virusname>.
e-mail Header is:
<header of scanned e-mail>
```

If **notify-sender-on-error-drop** is set and the message is dropped due to a scan error, an e-mail is sent to the mail sender of the scanned message. The content of the e-mail may appear as follows:

```
From: <admin>@<gateway_ip>
To: <sender_e-mail>
Subject: Mail Delivery Failure
This message is created automatically by mail delivery software. A message that you sent
could not be delivered to one or more of its recipients for the reason:
<src_ip> : <src_port> — <dst_port>: <dst_port> <reason>.
e-mail Header is:
<header of scanned e-mail>
```

## Understanding POP3 Antivirus Subject Tagging

If a scan error is returned and the fail mode is set to **pass**, the antivirus module passes the message through to the server. If **notify-recipient-on-error-pass** is set, the following string is appended to the end of subject field:

(No virus check: <reason>)

### Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The POP3 antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Enabling POP3 Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 135](#)

## Enabling POP3 Antivirus Scanning (CLI Procedure)

The POP3 antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to enable antivirus scanning for POP3 traffic, enter the following CLI configuration statement:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy policy-name anti-virus pop3-profile
```

### Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The POP3 antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding POP3 Antivirus Scanning on page 133](#)

## Understanding IMAP Antivirus Scanning

The IMAP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, if IMAP (Internet Message Access Protocol) antivirus scanning is enabled in a content security profile, the security device redirects traffic from a local mail server to the internal antivirus scanner before sending it to the local IMAP client.

This is a general description of how IMAP traffic is intercepted, scanned, and acted upon by the antivirus scanner.

1. The IMAP client downloads an e-mail message from the local mail server.

2. The security device intercepts the e-mail message and passes the data to the antivirus scanner, which scans it for viruses.
3. After completing the scan, the security device follows one of two courses:
  - If there is no virus, the device forwards the message to the client.
  - If there is a virus, the device sends a message reporting the infection to the client.



NOTE: See “Understanding Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications” on page 145 for information on protocol-only notifications for IMAP.

This topic includes the following sections:

- [Understanding IMAP Antivirus Mail Message Replacement on page 136](#)
- [Understanding IMAP Antivirus Sender Notification on page 136](#)
- [Understanding IMAP Antivirus Subject Tagging on page 137](#)
- [Understanding IMAP Antivirus Scanning Limitations on page 137](#)

## Understanding IMAP Antivirus Mail Message Replacement

If the antivirus scanner finds a virus in an e-mail message, the original message is dropped, the message body is truncated, and the content is replaced by a message that may appear as follows:

```
nContent-Type: text/plain
Your mail <src_ip> : <src_port> — <dst_port>: <dst_port> contains contaminated file
<filename> with virus <virusname>, so it is dropped.
```

## Understanding IMAP Antivirus Sender Notification

If **notify-sender-on-virus** is set and the message is dropped due to a detected virus, an e-mail is sent to the mail sender.

```
From: <admin>@<gateway_ip>
To: <sender_e-mail>
Subject: Mail Delivery Failure
This message is created automatically by mail delivery software. A message that you sent
could not be delivered to one or more of its recipients for the reason:
<src_ip> : <src_port> — <dst_port>: <dst_port> contaminated file <filename> with virus
<virusname>.
e-mail Header is:
<header of scanned e-mail>
```

If **notify-sender-on-error-drop** is set and the message is dropped due to a scan error, an e-mail is sent to the mail sender of the scanned message. The content of the e-mail may appear as follows:

```
From: <admin>@<gateway_ip>
To: <sender_e-mail>
Subject: Mail Delivery Failure
```



This message is created automatically by mail delivery software. A message that you sent could not be delivered to one or more of its recipients for the reason:

<src\_ip> : <src\_port> — <dst\_port>: <dst\_port> <reason>.

e-mail Header is:

<header of scanned e-mail>

## Understanding IMAP Antivirus Subject Tagging

If a scan error is returned and the fail mode is set to **pass**, the antivirus module passes the message through to the server. If **notify-recipient-on-error-pass** is set, the following string is appended to the end of subject field:

(No virus check: <reason>)

## Understanding IMAP Antivirus Scanning Limitations

**Mail Fragments** — It is possible to chop one e-mail into multiple parts and to send each part through a different response. This is called mail fragmenting and most popular mail clients support it in order to send and receive large e-mails. Scanning of mail fragments is not supported by the antivirus scanner and in such cases, the message body is not scanned.

**Partial Content** — Some mail clients treat e-mail of different sizes differently. For example, small e-mails (less than 10 KB) are downloaded as a whole. Large e-mails (for example, less than 1 MB) are chopped into 10 KB pieces upon request from the IMAP server. Scanning of any partial content requests is not supported by the antivirus scanner.

**IMAP Uploads** — Only antivirus scanning of IMAP downloads is supported. IMAP upload traffic is not scanned.

### Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The IMAP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Enabling IMAP Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 137](#)

## Enabling IMAP Antivirus Scanning (CLI Procedure)

The IMAP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to enable antivirus scanning for IMAP traffic, enter the following CLI configuration statement:

```
user@host# security utm utm-policy policy-name anti-virus imap-profile
```

**Release History Table**

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The IMAP antivirus scanning is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding IMAP Antivirus Scanning on page 135](#)

## CHAPTER 15

# Configuring Whitelists

- [Understanding MIME Whitelists on page 139](#)
- [Example: Configuring MIME Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning on page 140](#)
- [Understanding URL Whitelists on page 140](#)
- [Configuring URL Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 141](#)

## Understanding MIME Whitelists

---

The gateway device uses MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extension) types to decide which traffic may bypass antivirus scanning. The MIME whitelist defines a list of MIME types and can contain one or many MIME entries.

A MIME entry is case-insensitive. An empty MIME is an invalid entry and should never appear in the MIME list. If the MIME entry ends with a / character, prefix matching takes place. Otherwise, exact matching occurs.

There are two types of MIME lists used to configure MIME type antivirus scan bypassing:

- **mime-whitelist list**—This is the comprehensive list for those MIME types that can bypass antivirus scanning.
- **exception list**—The exception list is a list for excluding some MIME types from the mime-whitelist list. This list is a subset of MIME types found in the mime-whitelist.

For example, if the mime-whitelist includes the entry, **video/** and the exception list includes the entry **video/x-shockwave-flash**, by using these two lists, you can bypass objects with “video/” MIME type but not bypass “video/x-shockwave-flash” MIME type.

You should note that there are limits for mime-whitelist entries as follows:

- The maximum number of MIME items in a MIME list is 50.
- The maximum length of each MIME entry is restricted to 40 bytes.
- The maximum length of a MIME list name string is restricted to 40 bytes.

### Related Documentation

- [Example: Configuring MIME Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning on page 140](#)
- [Understanding URL Whitelists on page 140](#)
- [Configuring URL Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 141](#)

## Example: Configuring MIME Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning

---

This example shows how to configure MIME whitelists to bypass antivirus scanning.

- [Requirements on page 140](#)
- [Overview on page 140](#)
- [Configuration on page 140](#)
- [Verification on page 140](#)

### Requirements

Before you begin, decide the type of MIME lists used to configure MIME type antivirus scan bypassing. See “[Understanding MIME Whitelists](#)” on page 139.

### Overview

In this example, you create MIME lists called avmime2 and ex-avmime2 and add patterns to them.

### Configuration

#### Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure MIME whitelists to bypass antivirus scanning:

1. Create MIME lists and add patterns to the lists.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern avmime2 value
[video/quicktime image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vrml]
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern ex-avmime2 value
[video/quicktime-inappropriate]
```

2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

### Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security utm** command.

#### Related Documentation

- [Understanding URL Whitelists on page 140](#)
- [Configuring URL Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 141](#)

## Understanding URL Whitelists

---

A URL whitelist is a unique custom list that you define in which all the URLs or IP addresses in that list for a specified category are always bypassed for scanning. Because antivirus scanning is CPU and memory intensive action, if there are URLs or IP addresses that you are sure do not require scanning, you might want to create this custom list and add them to it.

- Related Documentation**
- [Understanding MIME Whitelists on page 139](#)
  - [Example: Configuring MIME Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning on page 140](#)
  - [Configuring URL Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 141](#)

---

## Configuring URL Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning (CLI Procedure)

---

To configure URL whitelists, use the following CLI configuration statements:

```
security utm custom-objects {
 custom-url-category { ; set of list
 name url-category-name; #mandatory
 value url-pattern-name;
 }
}
```

- Related Documentation**
- [Understanding MIME Whitelists on page 139](#)
  - [Example: Configuring MIME Whitelists to Bypass Antivirus Scanning on page 140](#)
  - [Understanding URL Whitelists on page 140](#)



# Configuring HTTP Trickling

- [Understanding HTTP Trickling on page 143](#)
- [Configuring HTTP Trickling to Prevent Timeouts During Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 144](#)

## Understanding HTTP Trickling

The HTTP Trickling is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, HTTP trickling is a mechanism used to prevent the HTTP client or server from timing-out during a file transfer or during antivirus scanning. On some slow link transferring, a large file could timeout if too much time is taken for the antivirus scanner to scan a complex file.

HTTP trickling is the forwarding of specified amounts of unscanned HTTP traffic to the requesting HTTP client to prevent the browser window from timing out while the scan manager examines downloaded HTTP files. (The security device forwards small amounts of data in advance of transferring an entire scanned file.)

HTTP Trickling is time-based and there is only one parameter, the time-out interval, to configure for this feature. By default, trickling is disabled.



**NOTE:** The timeout based trickling is packet driven. This means, if no packet is received within a certain time frame, HTTP trickling is discontinued. This setting is only supported for HTTP connections.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The HTTP Trickling is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Configuring HTTP Trickling to Prevent Timeouts During Antivirus Scanning \(CLI Procedure\) on page 144](#)

## Configuring HTTP Trickling to Prevent Timeouts During Antivirus Scanning (CLI Procedure)

---

The HTTP Trickling is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to configure HTTP trickling, use the following CLI configuration statements:

```
security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine {
 profile name {
 trickling timeout seconds;
 }
}
```

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The HTTP Trickling is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding HTTP Trickling on page 143](#)



## CHAPTER 17

# Configuring Notifications

- [Understanding Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications on page 145](#)
- [Configuring Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications \(CLI Procedure\) on page 145](#)
- [Understanding E-Mail Virus-Detected Notifications on page 146](#)
- [Configuring E-Mail Virus-Detected Notifications \(CLI Procedure\) on page 147](#)
- [Understanding Custom Message Virus-Detected Notifications on page 147](#)
- [Configuring Custom Message Virus-Detected Notifications \(CLI Procedure\) on page 148](#)

## Understanding Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications

The Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, when content is blocked because a virus is found or a scan error occurs, the client generally still receives a successful response code but with modified content (file replacement) containing a warning message. But with protocol-only notifications, a protocol-specific error code may be returned to the client. This way, the client determines that a virus was detected rather than interpreting that a file transfer succeeded.

### Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

### Related Documentation

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Configuring Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications \(CLI Procedure\) on page 145](#)

## Configuring Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications (CLI Procedure)

The Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to configure protocol-only virus-detected notifications, use the following CLI configuration statements:

```
security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile name {
 notification-options {
 virus-detection {
```

```

 type { protocol-only | message }
 }
 fallback-block {
 type { protocol-only | message }
 }
}
}
}

```

**Release History Table**

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Protocol-Only Virus-Detected Notifications on page 145](#)

## Understanding E-Mail Virus-Detected Notifications

The E-Mail Virus-Detected Notifications are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, for mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP), e-mail notification is used to notify the sender or the recipient about the detected viruses or the scanning errors. There are three settings for e-mail notifications:

- virus-detection/notify-mail-sender — This setting is used when a virus is detected. If it is enabled, an e-mail is sent to the sender upon virus detection.
- fallback-block/notify-mail-sender — This setting is used when other scan codes or scanning errors are returned and the message is dropped. If it is enabled, an e-mail is sent to the sender when an error code is returned.
- fallback-non-block/notify-mail-recipient — This setting is used when other scan codes or scanning errors are returned and the message is passed. If it is enabled, the e-mail sent to the recipient is tagged when an error code is returned.

**Release History Table**

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The E-Mail Virus-Detected Notifications are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Configuring E-Mail Virus-Detected Notifications \(CLI Procedure\) on page 147](#)

## Configuring E-Mail Virus-Detected Notifications (CLI Procedure)

The E-Mail Virus-Detected Notifications are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to configure the system to send e-mail notifications when viruses are detected, use the following CLI configuration statements:

```
security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile name {
 notification-options {
 virus-detection {
 notify-mail-sender
 }
 }
 fallback-block {
 notify-mail-sender
 }
 fallback-non-block {
 notify-mail-recipient
 }
}
```

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The E-Mail Virus-Detected Notifications are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding E-Mail Virus-Detected Notifications on page 146](#)

## Understanding Custom Message Virus-Detected Notifications

The Custom Message Virus-Detected Notifications are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, custom message notifications are mainly used in file replacement or in a response message when the antivirus scan result is to drop the file. When using custom messages, you can provide a customized message in the message content you can define customized subject tags.



**NOTE:** Custom-message in fallback-nonblock is used only by mail protocols.

**Release History Table**

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Custom Message Virus-Detected Notifications are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Configuring Custom Message Virus-Detected Notifications \(CLI Procedure\) on page 148](#)

## Configuring Custom Message Virus-Detected Notifications (CLI Procedure)

The Custom Message Virus-Detected Notifications are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, to configure the system to send custom messages when viruses are detected, use the following CLI configuration statements:

```
security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile name {
 notification-options {
 virus-detection {
 custom-message msg
 custom-message-subject subject-msg
 }
 fallback-block {
 custom-message msg
 custom-message-subject subject-msg
 }
 fallback-non-block {
 custom-message msg
 custom-message-subject subject-msg
 }
 }
}
```

**Release History Table**

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Custom Message Virus-Detected Notifications are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.

**Related Documentation**

- [Full Antivirus Protection Overview on page 71](#)
- [Understanding Custom Message Virus-Detected Notifications on page 147](#)

## PART 5

# Configuring and Managing Sophos Antivirus Protection

- [Configuring Sophos Antivirus Protection on page 151](#)



## CHAPTER 18

# Configuring Sophos Antivirus Protection

- [Sophos Antivirus Protection Overview on page 151](#)
- [Sophos Antivirus Features on page 152](#)
- [Understanding Sophos Antivirus Data File Update on page 154](#)
- [Comparison of Sophos Antivirus to Kaspersky Antivirus on page 154](#)
- [Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155](#)
- [Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Custom Objects on page 156](#)
- [Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Feature Profile on page 159](#)
- [Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus UTM Policies on page 165](#)
- [Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Firewall Security Policies on page 166](#)
- [Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Scanner with SSL Forward Proxy on page 168](#)
- [Managing Sophos Antivirus Data Files on page 175](#)

## Sophos Antivirus Protection Overview

---

The full file-based antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, sophos antivirus scanning is offered as a less CPU-intensive alternative to the full file-based antivirus feature. Sophos supports the same protocols as full antivirus and functions in much the same manner; however, it has a smaller memory footprint and is compatible with lower end devices that have less memory.

Sophos antivirus is as an in-the-cloud antivirus solution. The virus pattern and malware database is located on external servers maintained by Sophos (Sophos Extensible List) servers, thus there is no need to download and maintain large pattern databases on the Juniper device. The Sophos antivirus scanner also uses a local internal cache to maintain query responses from the external list server to improve lookup performance.

Because a significant amount of traffic processed by Juniper Unified Threat Management (UTM) is HTTP based, Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) checking is used to effectively prevent malicious content from reaching the endpoint client or server. The following checks are performed for HTTP traffic: URI lookup, true file type detection, and file checksum lookup. The following application layer protocols are supported: HTTP, FTP, SMTP, POP3 and IMAP.



**NOTE:** Starting with Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D35, the UTM Sophos antivirus (SAV) single session throughput is increased for optimizing tcp-proxy forwarding.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The full file-based antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.
12.3X48-D35	Starting with Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D35, the UTM Sophos antivirus (SAV) single session throughput is increased for optimizing tcp-proxy forwarding.

#### Related Documentation

- [Sophos Antivirus Features on page 152](#)
- [Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155](#)
- *Understanding TCP Proxy*
- *Enabling TCP Proxy Session to Increase the Network Transmit Speed*

## Sophos Antivirus Features

Sophos antivirus has the following main features:

- **Sophos antivirus expanded MIME decoding support**—Sophos antivirus offers decoding support for HTTP, POP3, SMTP, and IMAP. MIME decoding support includes the following for each supported protocol:
  - Multipart and nested header decoding
  - Base64 decoding, printed quote decoding, and encoded word decoding in the subject field
- **Sophos antivirus supports HTTPS traffic**—Starting with Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D25, Sophos antivirus over SSL forward proxy supports HTTPS traffic. Sophos antivirus over SSL forward proxy does so by intercepting HTTPS traffic passing through the SRX Series device. The security channel from the SRX Series device is divided as one SSL channel between the client and the SRX Series device and another SSL channel between the SRX Series device and the HTTPS server. SSL forward proxy acts as the terminal for both channels and forwards the cleartext traffic to UTM. UTM extracts the URL and the file checksum information from cleartext traffic. The Sophos antivirus scanner determines whether to block or permit the requests.

SSL forward proxy does not support client authentication. If client authentication is required by the server, UTM bypasses the traffic. UTM bypasses the HTTPS traffic under the following conditions:



- If SSL proxy does not parse the first handshake packet from the client, SSL forward proxy bypasses the traffic.
- If the SSL proxy handshake with the client and server is incomplete because of compatibility issues, connection drops.
- If the system resource is low, SSL forward proxy cannot handle the new connection and Sophos antivirus bypasses the traffic.
- If HTTPS traffic hits the whitelist of SSL forward proxy, SSL forward proxy and Sophos antivirus bypass the traffic.
- **Sophos antivirus scan result handling**—With Sophos antivirus, the TCP traffic is closed gracefully when a virus is found and the data content is dropped.

The following fail mode options are supported: content-size, default, engine-not-ready, out-of-resource, timeout, and too-many-requests. You can set the following actions: block, log-and-permit, and permit. Fail mode handling of supported options with Sophos is much the same as with full antivirus.

- **Sophos Uniform Resource Identifier checking**—Sophos provides Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) checking, which is similar to antispam realtime blackhole list (RBL) lookups. URI checking is a way of analyzing URI content in HTTP traffic against the Sophos database to identify malware or malicious content. Because malware is predominantly static, a checksum mechanism is used to identify malware to improve performance. Files that are capable of using a checksum include .exe, .zip, .rar, .swf, .pdf, and .ole2 (doc and xls).



**NOTE:** If you have a Juniper Networks device protecting an internal network that has no HTTP traffic, or has web servers that are not accessible to the outside world, you might want to turn off URI checking. If the web servers are not accessible to the outside world, it is unlikely that they contain URI information that is in the Sophos URI database. URI checking is on by default.

Release History Table

Release	Description
12.3X48-D25	Starting with Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D25, Sophos antivirus over SSL forward proxy supports HTTPS traffic.

#### Related Documentation

- [Sophos Antivirus Protection Overview on page 151](#)
- [Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155](#)
- [Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Feature Profile on page 159](#)
- [Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Scanner with SSL Forward Proxy on page 168](#)

## Understanding Sophos Antivirus Data File Update

---

Sophos antivirus uses a small set of data files that need to be updated periodically. These data files only contain information on guiding scanning logic and do not contain the full pattern database. The main pattern database, which includes protection against critical viruses, URI checks, malware, worms, Trojans, and spyware, is located on remote Sophos Extensible List servers maintained by Sophos.

The Sophos data files are updated over HTTP or HTTPS and can be updated manually or scheduled to update automatically. With Sophos antivirus:

- The signature database auto-update interval is once a day by default. This interval can be changed.
- There is no interruption in virus scanning capability during the data file update. If the update fails, the existing data files will continue to be used.
- By default, the URL for Sophos antivirus data file update is <http://update.juniper-updates.net/SAV/>.



**NOTE:** The Sophos antivirus scanning feature is a separately licensed subscription service. When your antivirus license key expires, functionality will no longer work because the pattern lookup database is located on remote Sophos servers. You have a 30-day grace period in which to update your license.

---

### Related Documentation

- [Sophos Antivirus Protection Overview on page 151](#)
- [Managing Sophos Antivirus Data Files on page 175](#)
- [Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155](#)

## Comparison of Sophos Antivirus to Kaspersky Antivirus

---

The Kaspersky and Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1x49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, Sophos Antivirus is much like Juniper Express Antivirus and also has similarities to the Full Antivirus feature:

- Unlike the Juniper Express and Full Antivirus solutions, the antivirus and malware database for Sophos is stored on a group of remote Sophos Extensible List servers. Queries are performed using the DNS protocol. Sophos maintains these servers, so there is no need to download and maintain large pattern databases on the Juniper device. Because the database is remote, there is no size limitation and there is a quicker response to new virus outbreaks.



**NOTE:** Sophos antivirus uses a set of data files that need to be updated on a regular basis. These are not typical virus pattern files; they are a set of small files that help guide virus scanning logic. You can manually download the data files or set up automatic download.

- Sophos does not provide the same prescreening detection as Kaspersky Antivirus. Sophos does provide a similar solution that is part of the Sophos engine and cannot be turned on and off.
- The Sophos antivirus scanning feature is a separately licensed subscription service. Also, the pattern lookup database is located on remote servers maintained by Sophos, so when your antivirus license key expires, functionality will no longer work. You have a 30-day grace period in which to update your license.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	The Kaspersky and Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1x49-D10 onwards.

**Related Documentation**

- [Sophos Antivirus Protection Overview on page 151](#)
- [Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155](#)

## Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview

Sophos antivirus is part of the Unified Threat Management (UTM) feature set, so you first configure UTM options (custom objects), configure the Sophos Feature, then create a UTM policy and a security policy. The security policy controls all traffic that is forwarded by the device, and the UTM policy specifies which parameters to use to scan traffic. The UTM policy is also used to bind a set of protocols to one or more UTM feature profiles, including Sophos antivirus in this case.

You must complete the following tasks to configure Sophos antivirus:

1. Configure UTM custom objects and MIME lists. See [“Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Custom Objects” on page 156](#),
2. Configure the Sophos antivirus feature profile. See [“Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Feature Profile” on page 159](#).
3. Configure a UTM policy. See [“Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus UTM Policies” on page 165](#)
4. Configure a security policy. See [“Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Firewall Security Policies” on page 166](#).

**Related Documentation**

- [Sophos Antivirus Protection Overview on page 151](#)

## Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Custom Objects

---

This example shows you how to create UTM global custom objects to be used with Sophos antivirus.

- [Requirements on page 156](#)
- [Overview on page 156](#)
- [Configuration on page 156](#)
- [Verification on page 158](#)

### Requirements

Before you begin, read about UTM custom objects. See [“Understanding UTM Custom Objects” on page 5](#).

### Overview

Configure MIME lists. This includes creating a MIME whitelist and a MIME exception list for antivirus scanning. In this example, you bypass scanning of QuickTime videos, unless if they contain the MIME type quicktime-inappropriate.



**WARNING:** When you configure the MIME whitelist feature, be aware that, because header information in HTTP traffic can be spoofed, you cannot always trust HTTP headers to be legitimate. When a Web browser is determining the appropriate action for a given file type, it detects the file type without checking the MIME header contents. However, the MIME whitelist feature does refer to the MIME encoding in the HTTP header. For these reasons, it is possible in certain cases for a malicious website to provide an invalid HTTP header. For example, a network administrator might inadvertently add a malicious website to a MIME whitelist, and, because the site is in the whitelist, it will not be blocked by Sophos even though Sophos has identified the site as malicious in its database. Internal hosts would then be able to reach this site and could become infected.

### Configuration

#### GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure a MIME list:

1. Click the **Configure** tab from the taskbar, and then select **Security>UTM>Custom Objects**.
2. Click the **MIME Pattern List** tab and then click **Add**.
3. In the MIME Pattern Name box, type **avmime2**.
4. In the MIME Pattern Value box, type **video/quicktime**, and click **Add**.
5. In the MIME Pattern Value box, type **image/x-portable-anympa**, and click **Add**.
6. In the MIME Pattern Value box, type **x-world/x-vrml**, and click **Add**.

To configure a MIME exception list:

1. Click the **Configure** tab from the taskbar, and then select **Security>UTM>Custom Objects**.
2. Click the **MIME Pattern List** tab and then select **Add**.
3. In the MIME Pattern Name box, type **exception-avmime2**.
4. In the MIME Pattern Value box, type **video/quicktime-inappropriate** and click **Add**.

Configure a URL pattern list (whitelist) of URLs or addresses that will be bypassed by antivirus scanning. After you create the URL pattern list, you will create a custom URL category list and add the pattern list to it.



**NOTE:** Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure custom URL category lists.

To configure a URL pattern whitelist:

1. Click the **Configure** tab from the taskbar, and then select **Security>UTM>Custom Objects**.
2. Click the **URL Pattern List** tab, and then click **Add**.
3. In the URL Pattern Name box, enter **urlist2**.
4. In the URL Pattern Value box, enter **http://example.net**. (You can also use the IP address of the server instead of the URL.)

Save your configuration:

1. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
2. If you are done configuring the device, click **Actions>Commit**.



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support—The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*.\[ ]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can use “\*” only if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “.”. You can only use “?” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax is supported: `http://*.example.net`, `http://www.example.ne?`, `http://www.example.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is not supported: `*example.net`, `www.example.ne?`, `http://*example.net`, `http://*`.

**Step-by-Step Procedure** To configure antivirus protection using the CLI, you must create your custom objects in the following order:

1. Create the MIME whitelist.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects mime-pattern avmime2 value [video/quicktime
image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vrml]
```

Create the MIME exception list.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects mime-pattern exception-avmime2 value
[video/quicktime-inappropriate]
```

2. Configure a URL pattern list (whitelist) of URLs or addresses that you want to bypass. After you create the URL pattern list, you create a custom URL category list and add the pattern list to it. Configure a URL pattern list custom object by creating the list name and adding values to it as follows.



**NOTE:** Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure custom URL category lists.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects url-pattern urllist2 value [http://www.example.net
192.168.1.5]
```



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support—The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.[\]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “\*” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “.”. You can only use “?” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax is supported: `http://*.example.net`, `http://www.example.ne?`, `http://www.example.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is not supported: `*example.net`, `www.example.ne?`, `http://*example.net`, `http://*`.

3. Configure a custom URL category list custom object by using the URL pattern list `urllist2` that you created earlier:

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects custom-url-category custurl2 value urllist2
```

## Verification

To verify the configuration, enter the `show security utm custom-objects` command.

- Related Documentation**
- [Sophos Antivirus Protection Overview on page 151](#)
  - [Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155](#)
  - [Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Feature Profile on page 159](#)
  - [Understanding UTM Custom Objects on page 5](#)

## Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Feature Profile

This example shows you how to configure a Sophos antivirus profile that defines the parameters that will be used for virus scanning.

- [Requirements on page 159](#)
- [Overview on page 159](#)
- [Configuration on page 159](#)
- [Verification on page 164](#)

### Requirements

Before you begin:

- Install a Sophos antivirus license. See [Installation and Upgrade Guide](#).
- Configure custom objects for UTM. See [“Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Custom Objects” on page 156](#).

### Overview

The following configuration defines Sophos as the antivirus engine and sets parameters, such as the data file update interval, notification options for administrators, fallback options, and file size limits.

### Configuration

#### GUI Step-by-Step Procedure



**NOTE:** The following example shows you how to create a custom Sophos profile. If you want to use the Juniper Networks preconfigured profile, use the profile named `junos-sophos-av-defaults` in your UTM policy. See [“Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus UTM Policies” on page 165](#).

1. Select and configure the engine type. Because you are configuring Sophos antivirus, you configure `sophos-engine`:
  - a. Click the **Configure** tab from the taskbar, and then select **Security>UTM>Anti-Virus**.
  - b. Click the **Global Options** tab and then click **Sophos**.

- c. Click **OK** and commit your changes.
2. Return to the antivirus Global Options screen as you did in step 1, and set the following parameters:
  - a. In the MIME whitelist list, select **exception-avmime2**.
  - b. In the URL whitelist list, select **custurl2**.
  - c. In the Pattern update interval (sec) box, type **2880**.
  - d. In the box, type the e-mail address that will receive SophosAdmin e-mail data file update notifications. For example - admin@example.net.
  - e. In the Custom message subject box, type **Sophos Data File Updated**.
  - f. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
3. Configure a profile for the sophos-engine and set parameters.
  - a. Click the **Configure** tab from the taskbar and then select **Security>UTM>Anti-Virus**. Click **Add**.
  - b. In the Add profile box, click the **Main** tab.
  - c. In the Profile name box, type **sophos-profl**.
  - d. In the Trickling timeout box, type **180**.



**WARNING:** When enabling the trickling option, it is important to understand that trickling might send part of the file to the client during the antivirus scan. It is possible that some of the content could be received by the client and the client might become infected before the file is fully scanned.

- e. URI checking is on by default. To turn it off, clear **yes** in the URI check box.
  - f. In the Content size Limit box, type **20000**.
  - g. In the Scan engine timeout box, type **1800**.
4. Configure fallback settings by clicking the **Fallback settings** tab. In this example, all fallback options are set to log and permit. Click **Log and permit** for the following items: Default action, Content size, Engine not ready, Timeout, Out of resource, Too many requests.



5. Configure notification options by clicking the **Notification options** tab. You can configure notifications for both fallback blocking and fallback nonblocking actions and for virus detection.

To configure notifications for Fallback settings:

- a. For Notification type, click **Protocol**.
  - b. For Notify mail sender, click **yes**.
  - c. In the Custom message box, type **Fallback block action occurred**.
  - d. In the Custom message subject box, type **\*\*\*Antivirus fallback Alert\*\*\***.
6. To configure notification options for virus detection, click the **Notification options cont...** tab.
    - a. For the Notification type option button, select **Protocol**.
    - b. For the Notify mail sender option button, select **yes**.
    - c. In the Custom message box, type **Virus has been detected**.
    - d. In the Custom message subject box, type **\*\*\*Virus detected\*\*\***.
  7. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
  8. If you are done configuring the device, click **Actions>Commit**.

#### Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure the Sophos antivirus feature profile using the CLI:



**NOTE:** The following example shows you how to create a custom Sophos profile. If you want to use the Juniper Networks preconfigured profile, use the profile named `junos-sophos-av-defaults` in your UTM policy. See [“Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus UTM Policies”](#) on page 165.

1. Select and configure the engine type. Because you are configuring Sophos antivirus, you configure `sophos-engine`.
 

```
[edit]
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus type sophos-engine
```
2. Commit the configuration.
3. Select a time interval for updating the data files. The default antivirus pattern-update interval is 1440 minutes (every 24 hours). You can choose to leave this default, or you can change it. You can also force a manual update, if needed. To change the default from every 24 hours to every 48 hours:
 

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]
user@host# set sophos-engine pattern-update interval 2880
```

4. Configure the network device with the proxy server details, to download the pattern update from a remote server:

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]
user@host# set sophos-engine pattern-update proxy
```

5. In most circumstances, you will not need to change the URL to update the pattern database. If you do need to change this option, use the following command:

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]
user@host# set sophos-engine pattern-update url
http://www.example.net/test-download
```

6. You can configure the device to notify a specified administrator when data files are updated. This is an e-mail notification with a custom message and a custom subject line.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]
user@host# set sophos-engine pattern-update email-notify admin-email
admin@example.net custom-message "Sophos antivirus data file was updated"
custom-message-subject "AV data file updated"
```

7. Configure a list of fallback options as block, log and permit, or permit. The default setting is log-and-permit. You can use the default settings, or you can change them.

Configure the content size action. In this example, if the content size is exceeded, the action taken is block.

First create the profile named sophos-profl.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]
user@host# edit sophos-engine profile sophos-profl
```

Configure the content size fallback-option to block.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile sophos-profl]
user@host# set fallback-options content-size block
```

Configure the default fallback option to log-and-permit.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile sophos-profl]
user@host# set fallback-options default log-and-permit
```

Configure log-and-permit if the antivirus engine is not ready.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile sophos-profl]
user@host# set fallback-options engine-not-ready log-and-permit
```

Configure log-and-permit if the device is out of resources.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile sophos-profl]
user@host# set fallback-options out-of-resources log-and-permit
```

Configure log-and-permit if a virus scan timeout occurs.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile sophos-profl]
user@host# set fallback-options timeout log-and-permit
```

Configure log-and-permit if there are too many requests for the virus engine to handle.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile sophos-profl]
```

```
user@host# set fallback-options too-many-requests log-and-permit
```

8. Configure notification options. You can configure notifications for fallback blocking, fallback nonblocking actions, and virus detection.

In this step, configure a custom message for the fallback blocking action and send a notification for protocol-only actions to the administrator and the sender.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile sophos-profl]
user@host# set notification-options fallback-block custom-message ***Fallback
block action occurred*** custom-message-subject Antivirus Fallback Alert
notify-mail-sender type protocol-only allow email administrator-email
admin@example.net
```

9. Configure a notification for protocol-only virus detection, and send a notification.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile sophos-profl]
user@host# set notification-options virus-detection type protocol-only
notify-mail-sender custom-message-subject ***Virus detected***
custom-message Virus has been detected
```

10. Configure content size parameters.



**NOTE:** When you configure the content-size value, keep in mind that in certain cases, content size is available in the protocol headers, so the max-content-size fallback is applied before a scan request is sent. However, in many cases, content size is not provided in the protocol headers. In these cases, the TCP payload is sent to the antivirus scanner and accumulates until the end of the payload. If the accumulated payload exceeds the maximum content size value, then max-content-size fallback is applied. The default fallback action is log and permit, so you may want to change this option to block, in which case such a packet is dropped and a block message is sent to the client.

In this example, if the content size exceeds 20 MB, the packet is dropped.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile sophos-profl]
user@host# set scan-options content-size-limit 20000
```

11. URI checking is on by default. To turn off URI checking:

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile sophos-profl]
user@host# set scan-options no-uri-check
```

12. Configure the timeout setting for the scanning operation to 1800 seconds.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile sophos-profl]
user@host# set scan-options timeout 1800
```

13. The Sophos Extensible List servers contain the virus and malware database for scanning operations. Set the response timeout for these servers to 3 seconds (the default is 2 seconds).

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile sophos-profl]
user@host# set scan-options sxl-timeout 3
```

14. Configure the Sophos Extensible List server retry option to 2 retries (the default is 1).  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile sophos-prof1]
user@host# set scan-options sxl-retry 2
```
15. Configure the trickling setting to 180 seconds. If you use trickling, you can also set timeout parameters. Trickling applies only to HTTP. HTTP trickling is a mechanism used to prevent the HTTP client or server from timing out during a file transfer or during antivirus scanning.



**WARNING:** When you enable the trickling option, keep in mind that trickling might send part of a file to the client during its antivirus scan. It is therefore possible that some of the content could be received by the client before the file has been fully scanned.

- ```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]  
user@host# set sophos-engine profile sophos-prof1 trickling timeout 180
```
16. Configure the antivirus module to use MIME bypass lists and exception lists. You can use your own custom object lists, or you can use the default list that ships with the device called junos-default-bypass-mime. In this example, you use the lists that you set up earlier.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]  
user@host# set mime-whitelist list avmime2  
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]  
user@host# set mime-whitelist list exception-avmime2
```
 17. Configure the antivirus module to use URL bypass lists. If you are using a URL whitelist, this is a custom URL category you have previously configured as a custom object. URL whitelists are valid only for HTTP traffic. In this example you use the lists that you set up earlier.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]  
user@host# set url-whitelist custurl2
```

Verification

Obtaining Information About the Current Antivirus Status

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security utm anti-virus status** command to view the antivirus status.

```
user@host>show security utm anti-virus status
```

Meaning

- Antivirus key expire date—The license key expiration date.
- Update server—URL for the data file update server.
 - Interval—The time period, in minutes, when the device will update the data file from the update server.

- Pattern update status—When the data file will be updated next, displayed in minutes.
- Last result—Result of the last update. If you already have the latest version, this will display **already have latest database**.
- Antivirus signature version—Version of the current data file.
- Scan engine type—The antivirus engine type that is currently running.
- Scan engine information—Result of the last action that occurred with the current scan engine.

Related Documentation

- [Sophos Antivirus Protection Overview on page 151](#)
- [Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155](#)

Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus UTM Policies

This example shows how to create a UTM policy for Sophos antivirus.

- [Requirements on page 165](#)
- [Overview on page 165](#)
- [Configuration on page 165](#)
- [Verification on page 166](#)

Requirements

Before you create the UTM policy, create custom objects and the Sophos feature profile.

1. Configure UTM custom objects and MIME lists. See “[Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Custom Objects](#)” on page 156.
2. Configure the Sophos antivirus feature profile. See “[Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Feature Profile](#)” on page 159.

Overview

After you have created an antivirus feature profile, you configure a UTM policy for an antivirus scanning protocol and attach this policy to a feature profile. In this example, HTTP will be scanned for viruses, as indicated by the **http-profile** statement. You can scan other protocols as well by creating different profiles or adding other protocols to the profile, such as: imap-profile, pop3-profile, and smtp-profile.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure a UTM policy for Sophos antivirus:

1. Click the **Configure** tab from the taskbar, and then select **Security>Policy>UTM Policies**. Then click **Add**.
2. Click the **Main** tab. In the Policy name box, type **utmp3**.
3. Click the **Anti-Virus profiles** tab. In the HTTP profile list, select **sophos-profl**.

4. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
5. If you are done configuring the device, select **Actions>Commit**.

**Step-by-Step
Procedure**

To configure a UTM policy for Sophos antivirus:

1. Go to the edit security utm hierarchy.

[edit]
user@host# **edit security utm**
2. Create the UTM policy utmp3 and attach it to the http-profile sophos-profl.

[edit security utm]
user@host# **set utm-policy utmp3 anti-virus http-profile sophos-profl**



NOTE: You can use the default Sophos feature profile settings by replacing `sophos-profl` in the above statement with `junos-sophos-av-defaults`.

Verification

To verify the configuration, enter the **show security utm utm-policy utmp3** command.

**Related
Documentation**

- [Sophos Antivirus Protection Overview on page 151](#)
- [Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155](#)
- [Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Feature Profile on page 159](#)

Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Firewall Security Policies

This example shows how to create a security policy for Sophos antivirus.

- [Requirements on page 166](#)
- [Overview on page 167](#)
- [Configuration on page 167](#)
- [Verification on page 168](#)

Requirements

Before you create the security policy, create custom objects, the Sophos feature profile, and the UTM policy.

1. Configure UTM custom objects and MIME lists. See [“Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Custom Objects” on page 156](#).
2. Configure the Sophos antivirus feature profile. See [“Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Feature Profile” on page 159](#).

3. Configure a UTM policy. See [“Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus UTM Policies” on page 165](#).

Overview

Create a firewall security policy that will cause traffic from the untrust zone to the trust zone to be scanned by Sophos antivirus using the feature profile settings defined in [“Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Feature Profile” on page 159](#). Because the match application configuration is set to any, all application types will be scanned.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure a security policy for Sophos antivirus:

1. Configure the untrust to trust policy to match any source address or destination address, and select the applications to be scanned to **any**.
 - a. Click the **Configure** tab from the taskbar, and then select **Security>Policy>FW Policies**. Then select **Add**.
 - b. In the Policy Name box, type **p3**.
 - c. In the Policy Action box, select **permit**.
 - d. In the From Zone list, select **untrust**.
 - e. In the To Zone list, select **trust**.
 - f. In the Source Address and Destination Address boxes, make sure that Matched is set to **any**.
 - g. In the Applications boxes, select **any** from the Application/Sets list, and move it to the Matched list.
2. Attach the UTM policy named utmp3 to the firewall security policy. This will cause matched traffic to be scanned by the Sophos antivirus feature.
 - a. From the Edit Policy box, click the **Application Services** tab.
 - b. In the UTM Policy list, select **utmp3**.
3. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
4. If you are done configuring the device, select **Actions>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure a security policy for Sophos antivirus:

1. Configure the untrust to trust policy to match any source-address.


```
[edit security]
user@host# set policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy p3 match
source-address any
```
2. Configure the untrust to trust policy to match any destination-address.


```
[edit security]
```

```
user@host# set policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy p3 match
destination-address any
```

3. Configure the untrust to trust policy to match any application type.

```
[edit security]
user@host# set policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy p3 match application
any
```

4. Attach the UTM policy named utmp3 to the firewall security policy. This will cause matched traffic to be scanned by the Sophos antivirus feature.

```
[edit security]
user@host# set policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy p3 then permit
application-services utm-policy utmp3
```

Verification

To verify the configuration, enter the **show security policies** command.

Related Documentation

- [Sophos Antivirus Protection Overview on page 151](#)
- [Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155](#)
- [Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Feature Profile on page 159](#)

Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Scanner with SSL Forward Proxy

This example shows how to configure Sophos antivirus over SSL forward proxy to support HTTPS traffic passing through SRX Series devices.



NOTE: Starting with Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D25, Sophos antivirus over SSL forward proxy supports HTTPS traffic.

- [Requirements on page 168](#)
- [Overview on page 168](#)
- [Configuration on page 169](#)
- [Verification on page 171](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand Sophos antivirus features. See “[Sophos Antivirus Features](#)” on page 152.

Overview

In this example, you configure Sophos antivirus over SSL forward proxy to support HTTPS traffic. You load the PKI certificate, generate a self-signed CA certificate, configure a trusted CA list, configure an SSL proxy profile using the root certificate, and enable SSL forward proxy. To configure UTM over SSL forward proxy, first match the

source/destination/application, set up the SSL proxy service, and perform scanning to determine whether to block or permit the requests.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **edit** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
request security pki generate-key-pair certificate-id ssl-inspect-ca size 2048 type rsa
request security pki local-certificate generate-self-signed certificate-id ssl-inspect-ca
domain-name www.example.net subject
"CN=www.example.net,OU=IT,O=example,L=Sunnyvale,ST=CA,C=US" email
security-admin@example.net
set security pki ca-profile trusted-ca-example ca-identity trusted-ca-example
request security pki ca-certificate load ca-profile trusted-ca-example filename
trusted-ca-example.crt
set services ssl proxy profile ssl-inspect-profile root-ca ssl-inspect-ca
set services ssl proxy profile ssl-inspect-profile trusted-ca trusted-ca-example
set security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy 1 then permit
application-services ssl-proxy profile-name ssl-inspect-profile
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure Sophos Antivirus over SSL forward proxy:

1. Generate a self-signed CA certificate on the device.

```
user@host> request security pki generate-key-pair certificate-id ssl-inspect-ca size
2048 type rsa
user@host> request security pki local-certificate generate-self-signed certificate-id
ssl-inspect-ca domain-name www.example.net subject
"CN=www.example.net,OU=IT,O=example,L=Sunnyvale,ST=CA,C=US" email
security-admin@example.net
```

2. Configure a trusted CA list.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security pki ca-profile trusted-ca-example ca-identity
trusted-ca-example

user@host> request security pki ca-certificate load ca-profile trusted-ca-example
filename trusted-ca-example.crt
```

3. Configure an SSL proxy profile using a root certificate.

```
[edit]
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile ssl-inspect-profile root-ca ssl-inspect-ca
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile ssl-inspect-profile trusted-ca
trusted-ca-example
```

4. Enable SSL forward proxy.

```
[edit]
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy 1 then permit
application-services ssl-proxy profile-name ssl-inspect-profile
```

Results

From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm**, **show services**, and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security utm
  traceoptions {
    flag all;
  }
  application-proxy {
    traceoptions {
      flag sophos-anti-virus;
    }
  }
  feature-profile {
    anti-virus {
      type sophos-engine;
      traceoptions {
        flag all;
      }
    }
    sophos-engine {
      sxl-timeout 4;
      profile profile1 {
        fallback-options {
          default log-and-permit;
          content-size log-and-permit;
          engine-not-ready log-and-permit;
          timeout log-and-permit;
          out-of-resources log-and-permit;
          too-many-requests log-and-permit;
        }
        scan-options {
          uri-check;
        }
        notification-options {
          virus-detection {
            type message;
          }
          fallback-block {
            type message;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
  utm-policy policy1 {
    anti-virus {
      http-profile profile1;
    }
  }
```

```

    }
  }
[edit]
user@host# show services
ssl {
  traceoptions {
    file ssl_trace size 1g;
    flag all;
  }
  proxy {
    profile ssl-p {
      root-ca haojue;
      actions {
        ignore-server-auth-failure;
      }
    }
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  policy trust_2_untrust {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application [ junos-http junos-https ];
    }
    then {
      permit {
        application-services {
          ssl-proxy {
            profile-name ssl-p;
          }
          utm-policy policy1;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying the Security PKI Local Certificate on page 171](#)
- [Verifying UTM Antivirus Statistics on page 172](#)
- [Verifying UTM Antivirus Statistics Details on page 172](#)
- [Verifying UTM Antivirus Status on page 174](#)

Verifying the Security PKI Local Certificate

Purpose Verify the security PKI local certificate.

Action From configuration mode, enter the **show security pki local-certificate** command.

```

user@host# show security pki local-certificate
Certificate identifier: SELF-SIGNED
  Issued to: abc, Issued by: CN = abc
  Validity:
    Not before: 02-20-2015 00:49 UTC
    Not after: 02-19-2020 00:49 UTC
  Public key algorithm: rsaEncryption(2048 bits)

Certificate identifier: ssl-inspect-ca
  Issued to: www.example.net, Issued by: CN = www.example.net, OU = IT, O =
example, L = Sunnyvale, ST = CA, C = US
  Validity:
    Not before: 01-28-2016 22:28 UTC
    Not after: 01-26-2021 22:28 UTC
  Public key algorithm: rsaEncryption(2048 bits)

```

Meaning The sample output confirms that the PKI local certificate ssl-inspect-ca is configured.

Verifying UTM Antivirus Statistics

Purpose Verify UTM antivirus statistics.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security utm anti-virus statistics** command.

```

user@host> show security utm anti-virus statistics
MIME-whitelist passed:          0
URL-whitelist passed:          0

Scan Requests:
  Total      Clean      Thread found  Fall back  Abort
  0          0          0            0          0

Fall back:
  Engine not ready:      0      log-and-permit  block      permit
  Out of resources:     0          0            0          0
  Timeout:               0          0            0          0
  Maximum content size:  0          0            0          0
  Too many requests:    0          0            0          0
  Others                 0          0            0          0

```

Meaning The sample output shows the list of UTM antivirus statistics.

Verifying UTM Antivirus Statistics Details

Purpose Verify UTM antivirus statistics details.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security utm anti-virus statistics details** command.

```

user@host> show security utm anti-virus statistics details
HTTP
  MIME-whitelist passed:          0
  URL-whitelist passed:          0

URI request:
  Total      Clean      Threat-found  Need-further-inspection  Abort

```

10 1 1 8 0

File request:

| Total | Clean | Threat-found | Fallback | Abort |
|-------|-------|--------------|----------|-------|
| 8 | 6 | 1 | 1 | 0 |

| Fall back: | log-and-permit | block | permit |
|-----------------------|----------------|-------|--------|
| Engine not ready: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Out of resources: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Timeout: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Maxmium content size: | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| Too many requests: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Others | 0 | 0 | 0 |

FTP

Scan request:

| Total | Clean | Threat-found | Fallback | Abort |
|-------|-------|--------------|----------|-------|
| 10 | 8 | 1 | 1 | 0 |

| Fall back: | log-and-permit | block | permit |
|-----------------------|----------------|-------|--------|
| Engine not ready: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Out of resources: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Timeout: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Maxmium content size: | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| Too many requests: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Others | 0 | 0 | 0 |

SMTP

Scan request:

| Total | Clean | Threat-found | Fallback | Abort |
|-------|-------|--------------|----------|-------|
| 10 | 8 | 1 | 1 | 0 |

| Fall back: | log-and-permit | block | permit |
|-----------------------|----------------|-------|--------|
| Engine not ready: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Out of resources: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Timeout: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Maxmium content size: | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| Too many requests: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Others | 0 | 0 | 0 |

POP3

Scan request:

| Total | Clean | Threat-found | Fallback | Abort |
|-------|-------|--------------|----------|-------|
| 10 | 8 | 1 | 1 | 0 |

| Fall back: | log-and-permit | block | permit |
|-----------------------|----------------|-------|--------|
| Engine not ready: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Out of resources: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Timeout: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Maxmium content size: | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| Too many requests: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Others | 0 | 0 | 0 |

IMAP

Scan request:

| Total | Clean | Threat-found | Fallback | Abort |
|-------|-------|--------------|----------|-------|
| 10 | 8 | 1 | 1 | 0 |

| Fall back: | log-and-permit | block | permit |
|-------------------|----------------|-------|--------|
| Engine not ready: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Out of resources: | 0 | 0 | 0 |

| | | | |
|-----------------------|---|---|---|
| Timeout: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Maxmium content size: | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| Too many requests: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Others | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Meaning The sample output shows the list of antivirus statistics details.

Verifying UTM Antivirus Status

Purpose Verify UTM antivirus status.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security utm anti-virus status** command to view the antivirus status.

```
user@host> show security utm anti-virus status
```

```
Anti-virus Key Expiry Date: 07/01/2010 00:00:00
  Update server: http://update.juniper-updates.net//
    Interval: 1440 minutes
    Auto update status: next update in 1440 minutes
    Last result: No error
Anti-virus data file info:
  Version:
  Scan engine information:
    Last action result: No error(0x00000000)
    Engine type: sophos-engine
```

Meaning

- Antivirus key expire date—The license key expiration date.
- Update server—URL for the data file update server.
 - Interval—The time period, in minutes, when the device updates the data file from the update server.
 - Auto update status—Displays the next automatic update of the data file in minutes.
 - Last result—Result of the last database update.
- Antivirus signature version—Version of the current antivirus signature data file.
- Scan engine type—The antivirus scan engine type that is currently running.
- Scan engine information—Result of the last action that occurred with the current scan engine.

Release History Table

| Release | Description |
|-------------|---|
| 12.3X48-D25 | Starting with Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D25, Sophos antivirus over SSL forward proxy supports HTTPS traffic. |

Related Documentation

- [Sophos Antivirus Features on page 152](#)

Managing Sophos Antivirus Data Files

Before you begin:

- Install a Sophos antivirus license. See the *Installation and Upgrade Guide*.
- Configure Sophos as the antivirus feature for the device. See “[Example: Configuring Sophos Antivirus Feature Profile](#)” on page 159. To set the antivirus engine type, you run the **set security utm feature-profile anti-virus type sophos-engine** statement.

In this example, you configure the security device to update the data files automatically every 4320 minutes (every 3 days). The default data file update interval is 1440 minutes (every 24 hours).

To automatically update Sophos data files:

```
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]
user@host# set sophos-engine pattern-update interval 4320
```



NOTE: The following commands are performed from CLI operational mode.

To manually update data files:

```
user@host> request security utm anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update
```

To manually reload data files:

```
user@host> request security utm anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-reload
```

To manually delete data files:

```
user@host> request security utm anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-delete
```

To check the status of antivirus, which also shows the data files version:

```
user@host> show security utm anti-virus status
```

To check the status of the proxy server:

```
user@host> show security utm anti-virus status
```

Related Documentation

- [Sophos Antivirus Protection Overview on page 151](#)
- [Understanding Sophos Antivirus Data File Update on page 154](#)
- [Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155](#)

PART 6

Configuring and Monitoring Content Filtering

- [Configuring Content Filtering on page 179](#)

Configuring Content Filtering

- [Content Filtering Overview on page 179](#)
- [Understanding Content Filtering Protocol Support on page 180](#)
- [Specifying Content Filtering Protocols \(CLI Procedure\) on page 181](#)
- [Content Filtering Configuration Overview on page 182](#)
- [Example: Configuring Content Filtering Custom Objects on page 183](#)
- [Example: Configuring Content Filtering Feature Profiles on page 185](#)
- [Example: Configuring Content Filtering UTM Policies on page 188](#)
- [Example: Attaching Content Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 190](#)
- [Monitoring Content Filtering Configurations on page 192](#)

Content Filtering Overview

Content filtering blocks or permits certain types of traffic based on the MIME type, file extension, and protocol command. The content filter controls file transfers across the gateway by checking traffic against configured filter lists.

The content filter module evaluates traffic before all other UTM modules, except Web Filtering. Therefore, if traffic meets criteria configured in the content-filter, the content-filter acts first upon this traffic.

You can configure the following types of content filters:

- **MIME Pattern Filter** — MIME patterns are used to identify the type of traffic in HTTP and MAIL protocols. There are two lists of MIME patterns that are used by the content filter to determine the action to be taken. The block MIME list contains a list of MIME type traffic that is to be blocked by the content filter. The MIME exception list contains MIME patterns that are not to be blocked by the content filter and are generally subsets of items on the block list. Note that the exception list has a higher priority than the block list. If you have MIME entries that appear on both lists, those MIME types are not blocked by the content filter because the exception list takes priority. Therefore, when adding items to the exception list, it is to your advantage to be specific.
- **Block Extension List** — Because the name of a file is available during file transfers, using file extensions is a highly practical way to block or allow file transfers. The content filter list contains a list of file extensions to be blocked. All protocols support the use of the block extension list.

- Protocol Command Block and Permit Lists — Different protocols use different commands to communicate between servers and clients. By blocking or allowing certain commands, traffic can be controlled on the protocol command level.

The block and permit command lists are intended to be used in combination, with the permit list acting as an exception list to the block list.



NOTE: If a protocol command appears on both the permit list and the block list, that command is permitted.

Because not all harmful files or components can be controlled by the MIME type or by the file extension, you can also use the content filter module to block ActiveX, Java Applets, and other types of content. The following types of content blocking are supported only for HTTP:

- Block ActiveX
- Block Java applets
- Block cookies
- Block EXE files
- Block ZIP files

**Related
Documentation**

- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
- [Understanding Content Filtering Protocol Support on page 180](#)
- [Content Filtering Configuration Overview on page 182](#)
- [Monitoring Content Filtering Configurations on page 192](#)

Understanding Content Filtering Protocol Support

Each supported protocol may implement available content filters differently. Not all filtering capabilities are supported for each protocol.

This topic contains the following sections:

- [HTTP Support on page 180](#)
- [FTP Support on page 181](#)
- [E-Mail Support on page 181](#)

HTTP Support

The HTTP protocol supports all content filtering features. With HTTP, the content filter remains in the gateway, checking every request and response between the HTTP client and server.

If an HTTP request is dropped due to content filtering, the client receives a response such as:

```
<custom drop message/user-configured drop
message>.<src_port><dst_ip>:<dst_port>Download request was dropped due to
<reason>
```

Therefore, a message may appear as follows:

```
Juniper Networks Firewall Content Filtering blocked request. 5.5.5.1:80->4.4.4.1:55247
Download request was dropped due to file extension block list
```

FTP Support

The FTP protocol does not support all content filtering features. It supports only the following: Block Extension List and Protocol Command Block List.

When content filtering blocks an FTP request, the following response is sent through the control channel:

```
550 <src_ip>:<src_port>-<dst_ip>:<dst_port><custom drop message/user-configured
drop message> for Content Filtering file extension block list.>
```

Therefore, a message may appear as follows:

```
550 5.5.5.1:21->4.4.4.1:45237 Requested action not taken and the request is dropped for
Content Filtering file extension block list
```

E-Mail Support

E-mail protocols (SMTP, IMAP, POP3) have limited content filtering support for the following features: Block Extension List, Protocol Command Block List, and MIME Pattern Filtering. Support is limited for e-mail protocols for the following reasons:

- The content filter scans only one level of an e-mail header. Therefore recursive e-mail headers and encrypted attachments are not scanned.
- If an entire e-mail is MIME encoded, the content filter can only scan for the MIME type.
- If any part of an e-mail is blocked due to content filtering, the original e-mail is dropped and replaced by a text file with an explanation for why the e-mail was blocked.

Related Documentation

- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
- [Specifying Content Filtering Protocols \(CLI Procedure\) on page 181](#)
- [Content Filtering Configuration Overview on page 182](#)
- [Monitoring Content Filtering Configurations on page 192](#)

Specifying Content Filtering Protocols (CLI Procedure)

To configure content filtering protocols, use the following CLI configuration statements:

```
content-filtering {
  profile name {
    permit-command cmd-list
```

```
    block-command cmd-list
    block-extension file-ext-list
    block-mime {
        list mime-list
        exception ex-mime-list
    }
    block-content-type {
        activex
        java-applet
        exe
        zip
        http-cookie
    }
    notification-options {
        type { message }
        notify-mail-sender
        custom-message msg
    }
}
traceoptions {
    flag {
        all
        basic
        detail
    }
}
}
```

Related Documentation

- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
- [Example: Configuring Content Filtering Custom Objects on page 183](#)
- [Example: Configuring Content Filtering Feature Profiles on page 185](#)
- [Example: Configuring Content Filtering UTM Policies on page 188](#)

Content Filtering Configuration Overview

A content security filter blocks or allows certain type of traffic base on the mime type, file extension, protocol commands and embedded object type. The content filter controls file transfers across the gateway by checking traffic against configured filter lists. The content filtering module evaluates traffic before all other UTM modules, if traffic meets the criteria configured in the content filter, the content filter acts first upon this traffic. The following procedure lists the recommended order in which you should configure content filters:

1. Configure UTM custom objects for the feature. See [“Example: Configuring Content Filtering Custom Objects” on page 183](#).
2. Configure the main feature parameters using feature profiles. See [“Example: Configuring Content Filtering Feature Profiles” on page 185](#).
3. Configure a UTM policy for each protocol and attach this policy to a profile. See [“Example: Configuring Content Filtering UTM Policies” on page 188](#).

4. Attach the UTM policy to a security policy. See [“Example: Attaching Content Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies”](#) on page 190.

**Related
Documentation**

- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)

Example: Configuring Content Filtering Custom Objects

This example shows how to configure content filtering custom objects.

- [Requirements on page 183](#)
- [Overview on page 183](#)
- [Configuration on page 183](#)
- [Verification on page 185](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

1. Decide on the type of content filter you require. See [“Content Filtering Overview”](#) on page 179.
2. Understand the order in which content filtering parameters are configured. See [“Content Filtering Configuration Overview”](#) on page 182.

Overview

In this example, you define custom objects that are used to create content filtering profiles. You perform the following tasks to define custom objects:

1. Create two protocol command lists called ftpprotocom1 and ftpprotocom2, and add user, pass, port, and type commands to it.
2. Create a filename extension list called extlist2, and add the .zip, .js, and .vbs extensions to it.
3. Define block-mime list call cfmime1 and add patterns to the list.

Configuration

**CLI Quick
Configuration**

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm custom-objects protocol-command ftpprotocom1 value [user pass port type]
set security utm custom-objects protocol-command ftpprotocom2 value [user pass port type]
set security utm custom-objects filename-extension extlist2 value [zip js vbs]
set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern cfmime1 value [video/quicktime image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vmrl]
```

```
set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern ex-cfmime1 value
[video/quicktime-inappropriate]
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure content filtering custom objects:

1. Create two protocol command lists.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects protocol-command ftpprotocom1
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects protocol-command ftpprotocom2
```

2. Add protocol commands to the list.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects protocol-command ftpprotocom1 value [user pass
port type]
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects protocol-command ftpprotocom2 value [user pass
port type]
```

3. Create a filename extension list.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects filename-extension extlist2
```

4. Add extensions to the list.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects filename-extension extlist2 value [zip js vbs]
```

5. Create antivirus scanning lists.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects mime-pattern cfmime1
user@host# set custom-objects mime-pattern ex-cfmime1
```

6. Add patterns to the lists.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects mime-pattern cfmime1 value [video/quicktime
image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vrml]
user@host# set custom-objects mime-pattern ex-cfmime1 value
[video/quicktime-inappropriate]
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
userhost#show security utm
custom-objects {
  mime-pattern {
    cfmime1 {
      value [ video/quicktime image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vrml ];
```



```

    }
    ex-cfmime1 {
        value video/quicktime-inappropriate;
    }
}
filename-extension {
    extlist2 {
        value [ zip js vbs ];
    }
}
protocol-command {
    ftpprotocom1 {
        value [ user pass port type ];
    }
}
protocol-command {
    ftpprotocom2 {
        value [ user pass port type ];
    }
}
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Verifying Content Filtering Custom Objects

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Purpose | Verify the content filtering custom objects. |
| Action | From operational mode, enter the show configuration security utm command. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3 • Content Filtering Overview on page 179 • Content Filtering Configuration Overview on page 182 • Example: Configuring Content Filtering Feature Profiles on page 185 • Example: Configuring Content Filtering UTM Policies on page 188 • Example: Attaching Content Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 190 |

Example: Configuring Content Filtering Feature Profiles

This example describes how to configure the content filtering feature profiles.

- [Requirements on page 186](#)
- [Overview on page 186](#)
- [Configuration on page 186](#)
- [Verification on page 188](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

1. Decide on the type of content filter you require. See [“Content Filtering Overview” on page 179](#).
2. Create custom objects. See [“Content Filtering Configuration Overview” on page 182](#).

Overview

In this example, you configure a feature profile called `confilter1` and specify the following custom objects to be used for filtering content:

1. Apply the `ftpprotocol1` protocol command list custom object to `confilter1`.
2. Apply blocks to Java applets, executable files, and HTTP cookies.
3. Apply the extension list `extlist2` custom object to `confilter1` for blocking extensions.
4. Apply the MIME pattern list custom objects `cfmime1` and `ex-cfmime1` to the `confilter1` for blocking MIME types.
5. Apply the protocol permit command custom object `ftpprotocol2` to `confilter1`. (The permit protocol command list acts as an exception list for the block protocol command list.)



NOTE: Protocol command lists, both permit and block, are created by using the same custom object.

6. Configure a custom message to send a notification.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1
set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1 block-command
  ftpprotocol1
set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1 block-content-type
  java-applet exe http-cookie
set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1 block-extension extlist2
set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1 block-mime list cfmime1
  exception ex-cfmime1
set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1 permit-command
  ftpprotocol2
set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1 notification-options
  custom-message "the action is not taken" notify-mail-sender type message
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure a content filtering feature profiles:

1. Create a content filtering profile.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1
```

2. Apply a protocol command list custom object to the profile.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1 block-command
ftpprotocom1
```

3. Apply blocks to available content.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1 block-content-type
java-applet exe http-cookie
```

4. Apply an extension list custom object to the profile.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1 block-extension
extlist2
```

5. Apply pattern list custom objects to the profile.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1 block-mime list
cfmime1 exception ex-cfmime1
```

6. Apply the protocol permit command custom object to the profile.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1 permit-command
ftpprotocom2
```

7. Configure the notification options.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1m
notification-options custom-message "the action is not taken" notify-mail-sender
type message
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security utm
feature-profile {
  content-filtering {
    profile contentfilter1;
    profile confilter1 {
      permit-command ftpprotocom2;
      block-command ftpprotocom1;
    }
  }
}
```

```
block-extension extlist2;
block-mime {
  list cfmime1;
  exception ex-cfmime1;
}
block-content-type {
  java-applet;
  exe;
  http-cookie;
}
notification-options {
  type message;
  notify-mail-sender;
  custom-message " the action is not taken";
}
}
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Verifying the Configuration of Content Filtering Feature Profile

Purpose Verify the content filtering feature profile.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show configuration security utm** command.

Related Documentation

- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
- [Content Filtering Overview on page 179](#)
- [Content Filtering Configuration Overview on page 182](#)
- [Example: Configuring Content Filtering Custom Objects on page 183](#)
- [Example: Configuring Content Filtering UTM Policies on page 188](#)
- [Example: Attaching Content Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 190](#)

Example: Configuring Content Filtering UTM Policies

This example describes how to create a content filtering UTM policy to attach to your feature profile.

- [Requirements on page 189](#)
- [Overview on page 189](#)
- [Configuration on page 189](#)
- [Verification on page 189](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

1. Decide on the type of content filter you require. See [“Content Filtering Overview” on page 179](#).
2. Configure UTM custom objects for each feature and define the content-filtering profile. See [“Content Filtering Configuration Overview” on page 182](#).

Overview

You configure UTM policies to selectively enforce various UTM solutions on network traffic passing through a UTM-enabled device. Through feature profiles you associate custom objects to these policies and specify blocking or permitting certain types of traffic.

In this example, you configure a UTM policy called `utmp4`, and then assign the preconfigured feature profile `confilter1` to this policy.

Configuration

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure a content filtering UTM policy:

You can configure different protocol applications in the UTM policy. The example only shows HTTP and not other protocols. Earlier you configured custom objects for FTP (`ftpprotocom1` and `ftpprotocom2`). Next you should add a content filter policy for FTP, for example:

```
set security utm utm-policy utmp4 content-filtering ftp upload-profile confilter1
```

```
set security utm utm-policy utmp4 content-filtering ftp download-profile confilter1
```

1. Create a UTM policy.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set utm-policy utmp4
```
2. Attach the UTM policy to the profile.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set utm-policy utmp4 content-filtering http-profile contentfilter1
```
3. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the `show security utm` command.

Related Documentation

- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
- [Content Filtering Overview on page 179](#)
- [Content Filtering Configuration Overview on page 182](#)

- [Example: Configuring Content Filtering Custom Objects on page 183](#)
- [Example: Configuring Content Filtering Feature Profiles on page 185](#)
- [Example: Attaching Content Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 190](#)

Example: Attaching Content Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies

This example shows how to create a security policy and attach the UTM policy to the security policy.

- [Requirements on page 190](#)
- [Overview on page 190](#)
- [Configuration on page 190](#)
- [Verification on page 191](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

1. Configure UTM custom objects, define the content filtering profile, and create a UTM policy. See "[Content Filtering Configuration Overview](#)" on page 182.
2. Enable and configure a security policy. See *Example: Configuring a Security Policy to Permit or Deny All Traffic*.

Overview

By attaching content filtering UTM policies to security policies, you can filter traffic transiting from one security zone to another.

In this example, you create a security policy called p4 and specify that traffic from any source address to any destination address with an HTTP application matches the criteria. You then assign a UTM policy called utmp4 to the security policy p4. This UTM policy applies to any traffic that matches the criteria specified in the security policy p4.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly attach a content filtering UTM policy to a security policy, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
[edit]
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4 match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4 match destination-address
  any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4 match application
  junos-http
set security from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4 then permit application-services
  utm-policy utmp4
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To attach a UTM policy to a security policy:

1. Create a security policy.

```
[edit]
user@host# edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4
```
2. Specify the match conditions for the policy.

```
[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4]
user@host# set match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address any
user@host# set match application junos-http
```
3. Attach the UTM policy to the security policy.

```
[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4]
user@host# set then permit application-services utm-policy utmp4
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security policies** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  policy p4 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application junos-http;
    }
    then {
      permit {
        application-services {
          utm-policy utmp4;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
default-policy {
  permit-all;
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Verifying Attaching Content Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies

Purpose Verify the attachment of the content filtering UTM policy to the security policy.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security policy** command.

- Related Documentation**
- [Unified Threat Management Overview on page 3](#)
 - [Content Filtering Overview on page 179](#)
 - [Content Filtering Configuration Overview on page 182](#)
 - [Example: Configuring Content Filtering Custom Objects on page 183](#)
 - [Example: Configuring Content Filtering Feature Profiles on page 185](#)
 - [Example: Configuring Content Filtering UTM Policies on page 188](#)

Monitoring Content Filtering Configurations

Purpose View content filtering statistics.

Action To view content filtering statistics in the CLI, enter the **user@host > show security utm content-filtering statistics** command.

The content filtering **show statistics** command displays the following information:

```
Base on command list: # Blocked
Base on mime list: # Blocked
Base on extension list: # Blocked
ActiveX plugin: # Blocked
Java applet: # Blocked
EXE files: # Blocked
ZIP files: # Blocked
HTTP cookie: # Blocked
```

To view content filtering statistics using J-Web:

1. Select **Clear Content filtering statistics**Monitor>Security>UTM>Content FilteringMonitor>Security>UTM>Content Filtering.

The following statistics become viewable in the right pane.

```
Base on command list: # Passed # Blocked
Base on mime list: # Passed # Blocked
Base on extension list: # Passed # Blocked
ActiveX plugin: # Passed # Blocked
Java applet: # Passed # Blocked
EXE files: # Passed # Blocked
ZIP files: # Passed # Blocked
HTTP cookie: # Passed # Blocked
```

2. You can click **Clear Content filtering statistics** to clear all current viewable statistics and begin collecting new statistics.

- Related Documentation**
- [Content Filtering Overview](#)
 - [Understanding Content Filtering Protocol Support](#)
 - [Content Filtering Configuration Overview](#)

- [Example: Attaching Content Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies](#)

PART 7

Configuring Web Filtering

- [Configuring Web Filtering on page 197](#)

CHAPTER 20

Configuring Web Filtering

- [Web Filtering Overview on page 198](#)
- [Enhanced Web Filtering Overview on page 200](#)
- [Understanding Enhanced Web Filtering Process on page 201](#)
- [Example: Configuring Enhanced Web Filtering on page 206](#)
- [Understanding the Quarantine Action for Enhanced Web Filtering on page 214](#)
- [Example: Configuring Site Reputation Action for Enhanced Web Filtering on page 216](#)
- [Understanding Integrated Web Filtering on page 221](#)
- [Example: Configuring Integrated Web Filtering on page 224](#)
- [Understanding Local Web Filtering on page 232](#)
- [Example: Configuring Local Web Filtering on page 234](#)
- [Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 240](#)
- [Example: Enhancing Security by Configuring Redirect Web Filtering Using Custom Objects on page 241](#)
- [Displaying Global SurfControl URL categories on page 249](#)
- [Monitoring Web Filtering Configurations on page 249](#)

Web Filtering Overview

The Integrated Web filtering is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, web filtering lets you manage Internet usage by preventing access to inappropriate Web content. There are four types of Web filtering solutions:

- Integrated Web filtering—The integrated Web filtering solution intercepts every HTTP request in a TCP connection. In this case, the decision making is done on the device after it identifies the category for a URL either from user-defined categories or from a category server (SurfControl Content Portal Authority provided by Websense).



NOTE: The integrated Web filtering feature is a separately licensed subscription service. When the license key for Web filtering has expired, no URLs are sent to the category server for checking, only local user-defined categories are checked.



NOTE: Integrated Web filtering solution is supported only on branch SRX Series devices.

- Redirect Web filtering—The redirect Web filtering solution intercepts HTTP requests and sends them to an external URL filtering server, provided by Websense, to determine whether to block the requests.



NOTE: Redirect Web filtering does not require a license.

- Local Web filtering—The local Web filtering solution intercepts every HTTP request in a TCP connection. In this case, the decision making is done on the device after it looks up a URL to determine if it is in the whitelist or blacklist based on its user-defined category.



NOTE: Local Web filtering does not require a license or a remote category server.

- Enhanced Web filtering—The enhanced Web filtering solution intercepts the HTTP and the HTTPS requests and sends the HTTP URL or the HTTPS source IP to the Websense ThreatSeeker Cloud (TSC). The TSC categorizes the URL into one of the 151 or more categories that are predefined and also provides site reputation information. The TSC further returns the URL category and the site reputation information to the device. The device determines if it can permit or block the request based on the information provided by the TSC.

You can bind either Web filtering profiles or antivirus profiles, or both, to a firewall policy. When both are bound to a firewall policy, Web filtering is applied first, then antivirus is applied. If a URL is blocked by Web filtering, the TCP connection is closed and no antivirus

scanning is necessary. If a URL is permitted, the content of the transaction is then passed to the antivirus scanning process.



NOTE: Web filtering is applied by TCP port number.

UTM Web filtering supports HTTPS protocol. UTM Web filtering solution uses the IP address of the HTTPS packet to make blacklist, whitelist, permit, or block decisions.

During a block decision, the UTM Web filtering solution does not generate a block page because the clear text is not available for a HTTPS session. However, the solution terminates the session and sends resets to the client and the server for the blocked HTTPS sessions.

UTM Web filtering configuration for HTTP is also applicable for the HTTPS sessions.



NOTE: The `sessions-per-client limit` CLI command, which imposes a session throttle to prevent a malicious user from generating large amounts of traffic simultaneously, does not support Web filtering.

Release History Table

| Release | Description |
|-------------|--|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Integrated Web filtering is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

Related Documentation

- [Understanding Integrated Web Filtering on page 221](#)
- [Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 240](#)
- [Understanding Enhanced Web Filtering Process on page 201](#)
- [Understanding Local Web Filtering on page 232](#)
- [Monitoring Web Filtering Configurations on page 249](#)
- [web-filtering on page 411](#)

Enhanced Web Filtering Overview

The Surf-Control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, Enhanced Web Filtering (EWF) with Websense is an integrated URL filtering solution. When you enable the solution on the device, it intercepts the HTTP and the HTTPS requests and sends the HTTP URL or the HTTPS source IP to the Websense ThreatSeeker Cloud (TSC). The TSC categorizes the URL into one of the 95 or more categories that are predefined and also provides site reputation information. The TSC further returns the URL category and the site reputation information to the device. The device determines if it can permit or block the request based on the information provided by the TSC.

Starting in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40, EWF supports HTTPS traffic by intercepting HTTPS traffic passing through the SRX Series device. The security channel from the SRX Series device is divided as one SSL channel between the client and the SRX Series device and another SSL channel between the SRX Series device and the HTTPS server. SSL forward proxy acts as the terminal for both channels and forwards the cleartext traffic to the UTM. UTM extracts the URL from the HTTP request message.

You can consider the EWF solution as the next-generation URL filtering solution, building upon the existing SurfControl solution.

Enhanced Web Filtering supports the following HTTP methods:

- GET
- POST
- OPTIONS
- HEAD
- PUT
- DELETE
- TRACE
- CONNECT

Release History Table

| Release | Description |
|-------------|---|
| 15.1X49-D40 | Starting in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40, EWF supports HTTPS traffic by intercepting HTTPS traffic passing through the SRX Series device. |
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Surf-Control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

Related Documentation

- [Web Filtering Overview on page 198](#)
- [Understanding Integrated Web Filtering on page 221](#)
- [Understanding Local Web Filtering on page 232](#)

- [Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 240](#)
- [Understanding Enhanced Web Filtering Process on page 201](#)
- [Example: Configuring Enhanced Web Filtering on page 206](#)

Understanding Enhanced Web Filtering Process

The Surf-Control Integrated feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, Web filtering enables you to manage Internet access and prevent access to inappropriate Web content. This topic describes how the Enhanced Web Filtering (EWF) feature intercepts, scans, and acts upon HTTP or HTTPS traffic.

1. The device creates TCP socket connections to the Websense ThreatSeeker Cloud (TSC).
2. The device intercepts an HTTP or an HTTPS connection and extracts each URL (in the HTTP request) or IP (in the HTTPS request). For HTTPS connection, EWF is supported through SSL forward proxy (SSL-FP).



NOTE: Starting with Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D25, Enhanced Web Filtering (EWF) over SSL forward proxy supports HTTPS traffic.

3. The device looks for the URL in the user-configured blacklist or whitelist.



NOTE: A blacklist or a whitelist action type is a user-defined category in which all the URLs or IP addresses are always blocked or permitted and optionally logged.

- If the URL is in the user-configured blacklist, the device blocks the URL.
 - If the URL is in the user-configured whitelist, the device permits the URL.
4. The device checks the user-defined categories and blocks or permits the URL based on the user-specified action for the category.
5. The device looks for the URL in the URL filtering cache.
 - If the URL is not available in the URL filtering cache, the device sends the URL in HTTP format to the TSC with a request for categorization. The device uses one of the connections made available to the TSC to send the request.
 - The TSC responds to the device with the categorization and a reputation score.
6. The device performs the following actions based on the identified category:
 - If the URL is permitted, the device forwards the HTTP request to the HTTP server.
 - If the URL is blocked, the device sends a deny page to the HTTP client and also sends a reset message to the HTTP server to close the connection

- If the URL is quarantined, the device sends a redirect response to the HTTP client and the URL is redirected to the HTTP server.
- If the category is not available, the device permits or blocks the URL based on the configured action for the reputation score.
- If an action for the site reputation score is not configured, the device permits or blocks the URL based on the default action configured in the Web filtering profile.

Functional Requirements for Enhanced Web Filtering

- **License key**—The Enhanced Web Filtering (EWF) solution builds upon the SurfControl integrated feature on the device. Two different valid license keys are required for the SurfControl integrated solution and for EWF. You need to install a new license to upgrade to the EWF solution.



NOTE: You can ignore the warning message "requires 'wf_key_websense_ewf' license" because it is generated by routine EWF license validation check.

A grace period of 30 days, consistent with other UTM features, is provided for the EWF feature after the license key expires.



NOTE: The device will continue to support the SurfControl integrated solution after the upgrade.

When the grace period for the EWF feature has passed (or if the feature has not been installed), Web filtering is disabled, all HTTP requests bypass Web filtering, and any connections to the TSC are disabled. When you install a valid license, the connections to the server are established again.

- A **debug** command provides the following information to each TCP connection available on the device:
 - Number of processed requests
 - Number of pending requests
 - Number of errors (dropped or timed-out requests)
- **TCP connection between a Web client and a Webserver**—An App-ID module is used to identify an HTTP connection. The EWF solution identifies an HTTP connection after the device receives the first SYN packet. If an HTTP request has to be blocked, EWF sends a block message from the device to the Web client. EWF further sends a TCP FIN request to the client and a TCP reset (RST) to the server to disable the connection. The device sends all the messages through the flow session. The messages follow the entire service chain.
- **HTTP request interception**—EWF intercepts the first HTTP request on the device and performs URL filtering on all methods defined in HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1. The device

holds the original request while waiting for a response from the TSC. If the first packet in the HTTP URL is fragmented or if the device cannot extract the URL for some reason, then the destination IP address is used for the categorization.



NOTE: For HTTP 1.1 persistent connections, the subsequent requests on that session are ignored by the EWF module.

If the device holds the original request for a long time, then the client will retransmit the request. The URL filtering code will detect the retransmitted packets. If the original HTTP request has already been forwarded, then EWF forwards the retransmitted packet to the server. However, if EWF is in the middle of first-packet processing or makes the calculation to block the session, then the solution drops the retransmitted packet. A counter tracks the number of retransmitted packets received by the device.

If the TSC does not respond in time to the categorization request from the device, then the original client request is blocked or permitted as per the timeout fallback setting.

- **HTTPS request interception**—Starting in Junos OS 15.1X49-D40, EWF intercepts HTTPS traffic passing through the SRX Series device. The security channel from the SRX Series device is divided as one SSL channel between the client and the SRX Series device and another SSL channel between the SRX Series device and the HTTPS server. SSL forward proxy acts as the terminal for both channels and forwards the cleartext traffic to the UTM. UTM extracts the URL from the HTTP request message.
- **Blocking message**—The blocking message sent to the Web client is user-configurable and is of the following types:
 - The Juniper Networks blocking message is the default message defined in the device that can be modified by the user. The default blocking message contains the reason why the request is blocked and the category name (if it is blocked because of a category).
 - Syslog message.

For example, if you have set the action for Enhanced_Search_Engines_and_Portals to block, and you try to access www.example.com, the blocking message is of the following form: **Juniper Web Filtering:Juniper Web Filtering has been set to block this site.**

CATEGORY: Enhanced_Search_Engines_and_Portals REASON: BY_PRE_DEFINED .

However, the corresponding syslog message on the DUT is:

WEBFILTER_URL_BLOCKED: WebFilter: ACTION="URL Blocked"

56.56.56.2(59418)->74.125.224.48(80)

CATEGORY="Enhanced_Search_Engines_and_Portals" REASON="by predefined category" PROFILE="web-ewf" URL=www.example.com OBJ=/ .

- **Monitoring the Websense server**—The URL filtering module uses two methods to determine if the TSC is active: socket connections and heartbeat. EWF maintains persistent TCP sockets to the TSC. The server responds with a TCP ACK if it is enabled. EWF sends an application layer NOOP keepalive to the TSC. If the device does not receive responses to three consecutive NOOP keepalives in a specific period, it determines the socket to be inactive. The EWF module attempts to open a new connection to the TSC. If all sockets are inactive, the TSC is considered to be inactive.

Therefore an error occurs. The error is displayed and logged. Subsequent requests and pending requests are either blocked or passed according to the server connectivity fallback setting until new connections to the TSC are opened again.

- **HTTP protocol communication with the TSC**—EWF uses the HTTP 1.1 protocol to communicate with the TSC. This ensures a persistent connection and transmission of multiple HTTP requests through the same connection. A single HTTP request or response is used for client or server communication. The TSC can handle queued requests; for optimal performance, an asynchronous request or response mechanism is used. The requests are sent over TCP, so TCP retransmission is used to ensure request or response delivery. TCP also ensures valid in-order, non-retransmitted HTTP stream data is sent to the HTTP client on the device.
- **Responses**—The responses adhere to the basic HTTP conventions. Successful responses include a 20x response code (typically 200). An error response includes a 4xx or 5xx code. Error responses in the 4xx series indicate issues in the custom code. Error responses in the 5xx series indicate issues with the service.

Error codes and meanings are as follows:

- 400—Bad request
- 403—Forbidden
- 404—Not found
- 408—Request canceled or null response
- 500—Internal server error

Errors in the 400 series indicate issues with the request. Errors in the 500 series indicate issues with the TSC service. Websense is notified of these errors automatically and responds accordingly.

You can configure the default fallback setting to determine whether to pass or block the request: **set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile juniper-enhanced fallback-settings default ?**

The response also contains the site categorization and site reputation information.

- **Categories**—A category list is available on the device. This list consists of categories, each containing a category code, a name, and a parent ID. Categories can also be user-defined. Each category consists of a list of URLs or IP addresses. Categories are not updated dynamically and are tied to the Junos OS release because they have to be compiled into the Junos OS image. Any update in categories needs to be synchronized with the Junos OS release cycle.
- **Caching**—Successfully categorized responses are cached on the device. Uncategorized URLs are not cached. The size of the cache can be configured by the user.
- **Safe search (HTTP support only, not HTTPS)**—A safe-search solution is used to ensure that the embedded objects, such as images on the URLs received from the search engines, are safe and that no undesirable content is returned to the client.

A URL is provided to the TSC to provide categorization information. If it is a search URL, the TSC also returns a safe-search string. For instance, the safe-search string is

safe=active. This safe-search string is appended to the URL, and a redirect response for redirecting the client's query with safe search is turned on. This ensures that no unsafe content is returned to the client. If the TSC indicates that it needs to be safe-searched, then you can perform the safe-search redirect.

For example, the client makes a request to the URL

http://images.example.com/images?hl=en&source=imghp&biw=1183&bih=626&q=adult+movies&gbv=2&aq=f&aqi=&aql=&oq=&gs_rfai=

No category action is defined for this URL . TSC returns safe-search string **safe=active**. The EWF code on the DUT generates a HTTP 302 response, with the redirect URL:

http://images.example.com/images?hl=en&source=imghp&biw=1183&bih=626&q=adult+movies&gbv=2&aq=f&aqi=&aql=&oq=&gs_rfai=&safe=active . This response is returned to the client. The client now sends out a safe redirect request to this URL.



NOTE: Safe-search redirect supports HTTP only. You cannot extract the URL for HTTPS. Therefore it is not possible to generate a redirect response for HTTPS search URLs. Safe-search redirects can be disabled by using the CLI option **no-safe-search**.

- **Site reputation**—The TSC provides site reputation information. Based on these reputations, you can choose a block or a permit action. If the URL is not handled by a whitelist or a blacklist and does not fall in a user or predefined category, then the reputation can be used to perform URL filtering decision.

The reputation scores are as follows:

- 100-90—Site is considered very safe.
- 80-89—Site is considered moderately safe.
- 70-79—Site is considered fairly safe.
- 60-69—Site is considered suspicious.
- 0-59—Site is considered harmful.

The device maintains a log for URLs that are blocked or permitted based on site reputation scores.

- **Profiles**—A URL filtering profile is defined as a list of categories, with each profile having an action type (permit, log-and-permit, block, quarantine) associated with it. A predefined profile, *junos-wf-enhanced-default*, is provided to users if they choose not to define their own profile.

You can also define an action based on site reputations in a profile to specify the action when the incoming URL does not belong to any of the categories defined in the profile. If you do not configure the site reputation handling information, then you can define a default action. All URLs that do not have a defined category or defined reputation action in their profile will be blocked, permitted, logged-and-permitted, or quarantined depending on the block or permit handling for the default action explicitly defined in the profile. If you do not specify a default action, then the URLs will be permitted. For search engine requests, if there is no explicit user-defined configuration, and the URL request is without the safe search option, then EWF generates a redirect response and

sends it to the client. The client will generate a new search request with the safe-search option enabled.



NOTE:

A URL filtering profile can contain the following items:

- Multiple user-defined and predefined categories, each with a permit or block action
- Multiple site reputation handling categories, each with a permit or block action
- One default action with a permit or block action

The order of search is blacklist, whitelist, user-defined category, predefined category, safe-search, site reputation, and default action.

Release History Table

| Release | Description |
|-------------|---|
| 15.1X49-D40 | Starting in Junos OS 15.1X49-D40, EWF intercepts HTTPS traffic passing through the SRX Series device. |
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Surf-Control Integrated feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |
| 12.3X48-D25 | Starting with Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D25, Enhanced Web Filtering (EWF) over SSL forward proxy supports HTTPS traffic. |

Related Documentation

- [Web Filtering Overview on page 198](#)
- [Understanding Integrated Web Filtering on page 221](#)
- [Understanding Local Web Filtering on page 232](#)
- [Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 240](#)
- [Enhanced Web Filtering Overview on page 200](#)
- [Example: Configuring Enhanced Web Filtering on page 206](#)

Example: Configuring Enhanced Web Filtering

- [Requirements on page 207](#)
- [Overview on page 207](#)
- [Configuration on page 208](#)
- [Verification on page 214](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, you should be familiar with Web filtering and Enhanced Web Filtering (EWF). See [“Web Filtering Overview” on page 198](#) and [“Understanding Enhanced Web Filtering Process” on page 201](#).

Overview

In this example, you configure custom objects and feature profiles.

In the first example configuration, you create a custom object called `urllist3` that contains the pattern `http://www.example.net 1.2.3.4`. The `urllist3` custom object is then added to the custom URL category `custurl3`.

In the second example configuration, you configure the Web filtering feature profile. You set the URL blacklist filtering category to `custblacklist`, set the whitelist filtering category to `custwhitelist`, and set the type of Web filtering engine to `juniper-enhanced`. Then you set the cache size parameters for Web filtering to 500 KB and the cache timeout parameters to 1800.

You name the EWF server as `rp.cloud.example.com` and enter 80 as the port number for communicating with it. (Default port is 80.) Then you create an EWF profile name called `junos-wf-enhanced-default`.

Next you select a category from the included whitelist and blacklist categories or select a custom URL category list you created for filtering against. Then you enter an action (permit, log and permit, block, or quarantine) to go with the filter. You do this as many times as necessary to compile your whitelists and blacklists and their accompanying actions. This example blocks URLs in the `Enhanced_Hacking` category. You also specify the action to be taken depending on the site reputation returned for the URL if there is no category match found.

Then you enter a custom message to be sent when HTTP requests are blocked. This example configures the device to send an `***access denied***` message. You select a default action (permit, log and permit, block, or quarantine) for this profile for requests that does not match to any explicitly configured action. This example sets the default action to block. You select fallback settings (block or log and permit) for this profile, in case errors occur in each configured category. This example sets fallback settings to block.

You can also define a redirect URL server so that instead of the device sending a block page with plain text html, the device will send an HTTP 302 redirect to this redirect server with some special variables embedded in the HTTP redirect location field. These special variables can be parsed by the redirect server and serve a special block page to the client with rich images and formatting. The CLI command hierarchy is as follows:

```
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
  junos-wf-enhanced-default block-message type custom-redirect-url
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
  junos-wf-enhanced-default block-message url http://10.10.121.18
```



NOTE: If you configure the security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default block-message , then the default block message configuration takes precedence over the security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default custom-block-message configuration.

Finally, you enter a timeout value in seconds. Once this limit is reached, fail mode settings are applied. The default is 15 seconds, and you can enter a value from 0 through 1800 seconds. This example sets the timeout value to 10. You also disable the safe-search functionality. By default, search requests have safe-search strings attached to them, and a redirect response is sent to ensure that all search requests are safe or strict.

Configuration

- [Configuring Enhanced Web Filtering Custom Objects on page 208](#)
- [Configuring the Enhanced Web Filtering Feature Profiles on page 210](#)

Configuring Enhanced Web Filtering Custom Objects

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist3 value http://www.example.net
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist3 value 1.2.3.4
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllistblack value http://www.untrusted.com
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllistblack value 13.13.13.13
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllistwhite value http://www.trusted.com
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllistwhite value 7.7.7.7
set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custurl3 value urllist3
set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custblacklist value urllistblack
set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custwhitelist value urllistwhite
```



WARNING: A custom category does not take precedence over a predefined category when it has the same name as one of the predefined categories. Do not use the same name for a custom category that you have used for a predefined category.

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure integrated Web filtering:

1. Create custom objects and create the URL pattern list.
[edit security utm]

- ```
user@host# set custom-objects url-pattern urllist3 value [http://www.example.net
1.2.3.4]
```
2. Configure the custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list.
 

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects custom-url-category custurl3 value urllist3
```
  3. Create a list of untrusted sites.
 

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects url-pattern urllistblack value
[http://www.untrusted.com 13.13.13.13]
```
  4. Configure the custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list of untrusted sites.
 

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects custom-url-category custblacklist value urllistblack
```
  5. Create a list of trusted sites.
 

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects url-pattern urllistwhite value
[http://www.trusted.com 7.7.7.7]
```
  6. Configure the custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list of trusted sites.
 

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects custom-url-category custwhitelist value urllistwhite
```

**Results** From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm custom-objects** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the instructions in this example to correct.

```
[edit]
userhost#show security utm custom-objects
url-pattern {
 urllist3 {
 value [http://www.example.net];
 }
 urllistblack {
 value [http://www.untrusted.com 13.13.13.13];
 }
 urllistwhite {
 value [http://www.trusted.com 7.7.7.7];
 }
}
custom-url-category {
 custurl3 {
 value urllist3;
 }
 custblacklist {
 value urllistblack;
 }
 custwhitelist {
 value urllistwhite;
```

```
}
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

### Configuring the Enhanced Web Filtering Feature Profiles

#### CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.



**NOTE:** Starting in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40, a new CLI option is available. The `http-reassemble` is added in the `show security utm feature-profile web-filtering` command. Be aware of its appearance in these examples if you use these commands to configure your EWF feature profiles.

```
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering url-whitelist custwhitelist
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering url-blacklist custblacklist
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced cache size 500
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced cache timeout 1800
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced server host
 rp.cloud.example.com
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced server port 80
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering http-reassemble
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering http-persist
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default category Enhanced_Hacking action log-and-permit
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default site-reputation-action very-safe permit
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default site-reputation-action moderately-safe log-and-permit
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default site-reputation-action fairly-safe log-and-permit
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default site-reputation-action harmful block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default site-reputation-action suspicious block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default default block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default custom-block-message "***access denied ***"
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default default block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default fallback-settings server-connectivity block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default fallback-settings timeout block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default fallback-settings too-many-requests block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default timeout 10
```

```

set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile
 junos-wf-enhanced-default no-safe-search
set security utm utm-policy mypolicy web-filtering http-profile my_ewfprofile01
set security policies from-zone utm_clients to-zone mgmt policy 1 then permit
 application-services utm-policy mypolicy
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile
 quarantine-custom-message "***The requested webpage is blocked by your
 organization's access policy**".
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile
 quarantine-message type custom-redirect-url
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile
 quarantine-message url besgas.spglab.example.net

```

**Step-by-Step Procedure** The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure the EWF feature profiles:

1. Configure the Web filtering URL blacklist.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set url-blacklist custblacklist
```
2. Configure the Web filtering URL whitelist.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set url-whitelist custwhitelist
```
3. Specify the EWF engine, and set the cache size parameters.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced cache size 500
```
4. Set the cache timeout parameters.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced cache timeout 1800
```
5. Set the server name or IP address.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced server host rp.cloud.example.com
```
6. Enter the port number for communicating with the server.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced server port 80
```
7. Set HTTP fragment reassemble.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering http-reassemble
```
8. Set HTTP requests in the same session.  

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering http-persist
```
9. Create a profile name, and select a category from the included whitelist and blacklist categories.

- ```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default category
Enhanced_Hacking action log-and-permit
```
10. Specify the action to be taken depending on the site reputation returned for the URL if there is no category match found.


```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host#set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default
site-reputation-action very-safe permit
user@host#set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default
site-reputation-action moderately-safe log-and-permit
user@host#set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default
site-reputation-action fairly-safe log-and-permit
user@host#set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default
site-reputation-action harmful block
user@host#set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default
site-reputation-action suspicious block
```
 11. Enter a custom message to be sent when HTTP requests are blocked.


```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default
custom-block-message "***access denied ***"
```
 12. Select a default action (permit, log and permit, block, or quarantine) for the profile, when no other explicitly configured action (blacklist, whitelist, custom category, predefined category actions, or site reputation actions) is matched .


```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default default block
```
 13. Select fallback settings (block or log and permit) for this profile.


```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default fallback-settings default
block
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default
fallback-settings server-connectivity block
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default
fallback-settings timeout block
set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default fallback-settings
too-many-requests block
```
 14. Enter a timeout value in seconds.


```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default timeout 10
```
 15. Disable the safe-search option.


```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile junos-wf-enhanced-default no-safe-search
```
 16. Configure a UTM policy for the Web-filtering HTTP protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it.


```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set utm-policy mypolicy web-filtering http-profile my_ewfprofile01
```
 17. Configure a security policy.

```
[edit security]
user@host# set policies from-zone utm_clients to-zone mgmt policy 1 then permit
application-services utm-policy mypolicy
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm feature-profile** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the instructions in this example to correct.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security utm
feature-profile{
web-filtering {
url-whitelist custwhitelist;
url-blacklist custblacklist;
http-reassemble;
http-persist;
type juniper-enhanced;
juniper-enhanced {
cache {
timeout 1800;
size 500;
}
server {
host rp.cloud.example.com;
port 80;
}
profile junos-wf-enhanced-default {
category {
Enhanced_Hacking {
action log-and-permit;
}
Enhanced_Government {
action quarantine;
}
}
}
site-reputation-action {
very-safe permit;
moderately-safe log-and-permit;
fairly-safe log-and-permit;
harmful block;
suspicious block;
}
default block;
custom-block-message "****access denied ****";
fallback-settings {
default block;
server-connectivity block;
timeout block;
too-many-requests block;
}
timeout 10;
no-safe-search;
}
utm-policy mypolicy {
web-filtering {
```

```
    http-profile my_ewfprofile01;
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying the Status of the Web Filtering Server on page 214](#)
- [Verifying the Increase in Web Filtering Statistics on page 214](#)

Verifying the Status of the Web Filtering Server

Purpose Verify the Web filtering server status.

Action From the top of the configuration in configuration mode, enter the **show security utm web-filtering status** command.

Verifying the Increase in Web Filtering Statistics

Purpose Verify the increase in Web filtering statistics.

Action From the top of the configuration in configuration mode, enter the **show security utm web-filtering statistics** command.

Related Documentation

- [Web Filtering Overview on page 198](#)
- [Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 240](#)
- [Enhanced Web Filtering Overview on page 200](#)
- [Understanding Enhanced Web Filtering Process on page 201](#)

Understanding the Quarantine Action for Enhanced Web Filtering

UTM Enhanced Web Filtering supports block, log-and-permit, and permit actions for HTTP/HTTPS requests. In addition to this, UTM Enhanced Web Filtering now supports the quarantine action which allows or denies access to the blocked site based on the user's response to the message.

The following sequence explains how the HTTP or HTTPS request is intercepted, redirected, and acted upon by the quarantine action:

- The HTTP client requests URL access.
- The device intercepts the HTTP request and sends the extracted URL to the Websense Thread Seeker Cloud (TSC).
- The TSC returns the URL category and the site reputation information to the device.

- If the action configured for the category is quarantine, the device logs the quarantine action and sends a redirect response to HTTP client.
- The URL is sent to the HTTP server for redirecting.
- The device shows a warning message stating that the access to the URL is blocked according to the organization's security policies and prompts the user to respond.
- If the user response is "No," the session is terminated. If the user response is "Yes," the user is allowed access to the site and such access is logged and reported to the administrator.



NOTE: On all branch SRX Series devices, the quarantine action is supported only for UTM Enhanced Web Filtering or Juniper enhanced type of Web filtering.

Quarantine Message

The quarantine message sent to the HTTP client is user-configurable and is of the following types:

- Default message

The default quarantine message is displayed when a user attempts to access a quarantined website and it contains the following information:

- URL name
- Quarantine reason
- Category (if available)
- Site-reputation (if available)

For example, if you have set the action for Enhanced_Search_Engines_and_Portals to quarantine, and you try to access www.search.example.com, the quarantine message is as follows:

*****The requested webpage is blocked by your organization's access policy*****

- Syslog message.

The syslog message will be logged by the system when the user access the web page that has already been quarantined and marked as block or permit.

The corresponding syslog message on the device under test is:

```
Jan 25 15:10:40 rodian utmd[3871]: WEBFILTER_URL_BLOCKED: WebFilter:
ACTION="URL Blocked" 99.99.99.4(60525)->74.125.224.114(80)
CATEGORY="Enhanced_Search_Engines_and_Portals" REASON="by predefined
category(quarantine)" PROFILE="ewf-test-profile" URL=www.search.example.com
OBJ=/'
```

- Related Documentation**
- [Web Filtering Overview on page 198](#)
 - [Understanding Integrated Web Filtering on page 221](#)
 - [Understanding Local Web Filtering on page 232](#)
 - [Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 240](#)
 - [Understanding Enhanced Web Filtering Process on page 201](#)
 - [Example: Configuring Enhanced Web Filtering on page 206](#)
 - [Example: Configuring Site Reputation Action for Enhanced Web Filtering on page 216](#)

Example: Configuring Site Reputation Action for Enhanced Web Filtering

This example shows how to configure the site reputation action for both categorized and uncategorized URLs.

- [Requirements on page 216](#)
- [Overview on page 216](#)
- [Configuration on page 217](#)
- [Verification on page 219](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, you should be familiar with Web Filtering and Enhanced Web Filtering. See “[Web Filtering Overview](#)” on page 198 and “[Understanding Enhanced Web Filtering Process](#)” on page 201.

Overview

In this example, you configure Web Filtering profiles to URLs according to defined categories using the site reputation action. You set the URL whitelist filtering category to `url-cat-white` and the type of Web Filtering engine to `juniper-enhanced`. Then you set the cache size parameters for Web Filtering and the cache timeout parameters to 1.

Then you create a juniper-enhanced profile called profile `ewf-test-profile`, set the URL whitelist category to `cust-cat-quarantine`, and set the reputation action to quarantine.

You enter a custom message to be sent when HTTP requests are quarantined. In this example, the following message is sent: `***The requested webpage is blocked by your organization's access policy***`.

You block URLs in the `Enhanced_News_and_Media` category and permit URLs in the `Enhanced_Education` category. Then you quarantine the URLs in the `Enhanced_Streaming_Media` category and configure the device to send the following message: `***The requested webpage is blocked by your organization's access policy***`.

In this example, you set the default action to permit. You select fallback settings (block or log and permit) for this profile in case errors occur in each configured category. Finally, you set the fallback settings to block.

Configuration

Configuring Site Reputation Action

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering set url-whitelist url-cat-white
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced cache size
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced cache timeout 1
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile
category cust-cat-quarantine action quarantine
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile
category Enhanced_News_and_Media action block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile
category Enhanced_Education action permit
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile
category Enhanced_Education reputation-action harmful block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile
category Enhanced_Streaming_Media action quarantine
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile
default permit
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile
default quarantine-message "*** The requested webpage is blocked by your
organization's access policy***".
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile
fallback-settings server-connectivity block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile
fallback-settings timeout block
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure the site reputation action:

1. Configure the Web Filtering URL whitelist.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set url-whitelist custwhitelist
```
2. Specify the Enhanced Web Filtering engine, and set the cache size parameters.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced cache size
```
3. Set the cache timeout parameters.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced cache timeout 1
```
4. Create a profile name, and select a category from the whitelist categories.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
```

```
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile category
cust-cat-quarantine action quarantine
```

5. Create a profile name, and select a category from the whitelist categories.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile category
Enhanced_News_and_Media action block
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile category
Enhanced_Education action permit
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile category
Enhanced_Education action harmful block
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile category
Enhanced_Streaming_Media action quarantine
```

6. Enter a warning message to be sent when HTTP requests are quarantined.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile
quarantine-custom-message "***The requested webpage is blocked by your
organization's access policy ***"
```

7. Select a default action (permit, log and permit, block, or quarantine) for the profile, when no other explicitly configured action (blacklist, whitelist, custom category, predefined category or site reputation) is matched .

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile default permit
```

8. Select fallback settings (block or log and permit) for this profile.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile fallback-settings
server-connectivity block
user@host# set juniper-enhanced profile ewf-test-profile fallback-settings timeout
block
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the instructions in this example to correct.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security utm
feature-profile {
  web-filtering {
    url-whitelist url-cat-white;
    type juniper-enhanced;
    traceoptions;
    flag all;
  }
  juniper-enhanced {
    cache {
      timeout 1
    }
  }
  profile ewf-test-profile {
    category {
```

```

cust-cat-quarantine {
  action quarantine;
}
Enhanced_News_and_Media {
  action block;
  reputation-action;
}
Enhanced_Education {
  action permit;
  reputation-action;
  {
    harmful block;
  }
}
Enhanced_Streaming_Media {
  action quarantine;
}
}
default permit;
quarantine-custom-message "***The requested webpage is blocked by your
organization's access policy***".
fallback-settings {
  server-connectivity block;
  timeout block;
}
}
}
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Confirm that the configuration is working properly.

- [Verifying the Status of UTM Service on page 219](#)
- [Verifying the Status of UTM Session on page 220](#)
- [Verifying the Status of UTM Web Filtering on page 220](#)
- [Verifying the Statistics of UTM Web Filtering on page 220](#)

Verifying the Status of UTM Service

Purpose Verify the UTM service status.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security utm status** command.

Sample Output

```

user@host>show security utm status
UTM service status: Running

```

Verifying the Status of UTM Session

- Purpose** Verify the UTM session status.
- Action** From operational mode, enter the **show security utm session** command.

Sample Output

```
user@host>show security utm session
UTM session info:
Maximum sessions:           4000
Total allocated sessions:    0
Total freed sessions:        0
Active sessions:             0
```

Verifying the Status of UTM Web Filtering

- Purpose** Verify the UTM Web filtering status.
- Action** From operational mode, enter the **show security utm web-filtering status** command.

Sample Output

```
user@host>show security utm web-filtering status
UTM web-filtering status:
  Server status: Juniper Enhanced using Websense server UP
```

Verifying the Statistics of UTM Web Filtering

- Purpose** Verify the Web filtering statistics for connections including whitelist and blacklist hits and custom category hits.
- Action** From operational mode, enter the **show security utm web-filtering statistics** command.

Sample Output

```
user@host>show security utm web-filtering statistics
UTM web-filtering statistics:
Total requests:              2594
white list hit:               0
Black list hit:               0
Queries to server:            2407
Server reply permit:          1829
Server reply block:           0
Server reply quarantine:      517
Server reply quarantine block: 0
Server reply quarantine permit: 8
Custom category permit:        0
Custom category block:         0
Custom category quarantine:    0
Custom category quarantine block: 0
Custom category quarantine permit: 0
Site reputation permit:        0
Site reputation block:         0
Site reputation quarantine:    0
Site reputation quarantine block: 0
Site reputation quarantine permit: 0
```

| | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------|-------|
| Site reputation by Category | 0 | |
| Site reputation by Global | 0 | |
| Cache hit permit: | 41 | |
| Cache hit block: | 0 | |
| Cache hit quarantine: | 144 | |
| Cache hit quarantine block: | 0 | |
| Cache hit quarantine permit: | 1 | |
| Safe-search redirect: | 0 | |
| Web-filtering sessions in total: | 16000 | |
| Web-filtering sessions in use: | 0 | |
| Fallback: | log-and-permit | block |
| Default | 0 | 0 |
| Timeout | 0 | 0 |
| Connectivity | 0 | 1 |
| Too-many-requests | 0 | 0 |

Related Documentation

- [Web Filtering Overview on page 198](#)
- [Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 240](#)
- [Enhanced Web Filtering Overview on page 200](#)
- [Understanding Enhanced Web Filtering Process on page 201](#)
- [Example: Configuring Enhanced Web Filtering on page 206](#)
- [Understanding the Quarantine Action for Enhanced Web Filtering on page 214](#)
- [web-filtering on page 411](#)

Understanding Integrated Web Filtering

The Integrated Web Filtering is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, with integrated Web filtering, the firewall intercepts every HTTP request in a TCP connection and extracts the URL from the HTTP request. Each individual HTTP request is blocked or permitted based on URL filtering profiles defined by you. The decision making is done on the device after it identifies a category for a URL.

A URL category is a list of URLs grouped by content. URL categories are predefined and maintained by SurfControl or are defined by you. SurfControl maintains about 40 predefined categories. When defining your own URL categories, you can group URLs and create categories specific to your needs.

You define your own categories using URL pattern list and custom URL category list custom objects. Once defined, you can select your categories when you configure your Web filtering profile. Each category can have a maximum of 20 URLs. When you create a category, you can add either the URL or the IP address of a site. When you add a URL to a user-defined category, the device performs DNS lookup, resolves the host name into IP addresses, and caches this information. When a user tries to access a site with the IP address of the site, the device checks the cached list of IP addresses and tries to resolve the hostname. Many sites have dynamic IP addresses, meaning that their IP addresses change periodically. A user attempting to access a site can type an IP address that is not in the cached list on the device. Therefore, if you know the IP addresses of sites you are adding to a category, enter both the URL and the IP address(es) of the site.



NOTE: If a URL appears in both a user-defined category and a predefined category, the device matches the URL to the user-defined category.



NOTE: Web filtering is performed on all the methods defined in HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1.

This topic contains the following sections:

- [Integrated Web Filtering Process on page 222](#)
- [Integrated Web Filtering Cache on page 222](#)
- [Integrated Web Filtering Profiles on page 223](#)
- [Profile Matching Precedence on page 223](#)

Integrated Web Filtering Process

This is a general description of how Web traffic is intercepted and acted upon by the Web filtering module.

1. The device intercepts a TCP connection.
2. The device intercepts each HTTP request in the TCP connection.
3. The device extracts each URL in the HTTP request and checks its URL filter cache.
4. Global Web filtering whitelists and blacklists are checked first for block or permit.
5. If the HTTP request URL is allowed based on cached parameters, it is forwarded to the webserver. If there is no cache match, a request for categorization is sent to the SurfControl server. (If the HTTP request URL is blocked, the request is not forwarded and a notification message is logged.)
6. In the allowed case, the SurfControl server responds with the corresponding category.
7. Based on the identified category, if the URL is permitted, the device forwards the HTTP request to the webserver. If the URL is not permitted, then a deny page is sent to the HTTP client.

Integrated Web Filtering Cache

By default, the device retrieves and caches the URL categories from the SurfControl CPA server. This process reduces the overhead of accessing the SurfControl CPA server each time the device receives a new request for previously requested URLs. You can configure the size and duration of the cache, according to the performance and memory requirements of your networking environment. The lifetime of cached items is configurable between 1 and 1800 seconds with a default value of 300 seconds.



NOTE: Caches are not preserved across device reboots or power losses.

Integrated Web Filtering Profiles

You configure Web filtering profiles that permit or block URLs according to defined categories. A Web filtering profile consists of a group of URL categories assigned one of the following actions:

- Permit — The device always allows access to the websites in this category.
- Block — The device blocks access to the websites in this category. When the device blocks access to this category of websites, it displays a message in your browser indicating the URL category.
- Blacklist — The device always blocks access to the websites in this list. You can create a user-defined category.
- Whitelist — The device always allows access to the websites in this list. You can create a user-defined category.



NOTE: A predefined profile is provided and can be used if you choose not to define your own profile.

A Web filtering profile may contain one blacklist or one whitelist, multiple user-defined and/or predefined categories each with a permit or block action, and an *Other* category with a permit or block action. You can define an action for all *Other* categories in a profile to specify what to do when the incoming URL does not belong to any of the categories defined in the profile. If the action for the *Other* category is block, the incoming URL is blocked if it does not match any of the categories explicitly defined in the profile. If an action for the *Other* category is not specified, the default action of permit is applied to the incoming URL not matching any category.

Profile Matching Precedence

When a profile employs several categories for URL matching, those categories are checked for matches in the following order:

1. If present, the global blacklist is checked first. If a match is made, the URL is blocked. If no match is found...
2. The global whitelist is checked next. If a match is made, the URL is permitted. If no match is found...
3. User-defined categories are checked next. If a match is made, the URL is blocked or permitted as specified. If no match is found...
4. Predefined categories are checked next. If a match is made, the URL is blocked or permitted as specified. If no match is found...
5. The *Other* category is checked next. If a match is made, the URL is blocked or permitted as specified.

Release History Table

| Release | Description |
|-------------|--|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Integrated Web Filtering is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

Related Documentation

- [Web Filtering Overview on page 198](#)
- [Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 240](#)
- [Understanding Local Web Filtering on page 232](#)
- [Example: Configuring Integrated Web Filtering on page 224](#)

Example: Configuring Integrated Web Filtering

The Integrated Web Filtering is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, this example shows how to configure integrated Web filtering.

- [Requirements on page 224](#)
- [Overview on page 224](#)
- [Configuration on page 225](#)
- [Verification on page 231](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, learn more about Web filtering. See “[Web Filtering Overview](#)” on page 198.

Overview

In this example you configure integrated Web filtering custom objects, integrated Web filtering feature profiles, and integrated Web filtering UTM policies. You also attach integrated Web filtering UTM policies to security policies.

In the first example configuration you create a custom object called `urllist3` that contains the pattern `http://www.example.net 1.2.3.4`. The `urllist3` custom object is then added to the custom URL category `custurl3`.

In the second example configuration, you configure the Web filtering feature profile. You set the URL blacklist filtering category to `custblacklist`, set the whitelist filtering category to `custwhitelist` and the type of Web filtering engine to `surf-control-integrated`. Then you set the cache size parameters for Web filtering to 500 KB, which is the default, and the cache timeout parameters to 1800.

You name the Surf Control server as `surfcontrolserver` and enter 8080 as the port number for communicating with it. (Default ports are 80, 8080, and 8081.) Then you create a `surf-control-integrated` profile name called `surfprofile1`.

Next you select a category from the included whitelist and blacklist categories or select a custom URL category list you created for filtering against. Then you enter an action

(permit, log and permit, block) to go with the filter. You do this as many times as necessary to compile your whitelists and blacklists and their accompanying actions. This example blocks URLs in the custurl3 category.

Then you enter a custom message to be sent when HTTP requests are blocked. This example configures the device to send an *****access denied***** message. You select a default action (permit, log and permit, block) for this profile for requests that experience errors. This example sets the default action to block. You select fallback settings (block or log and permit) for this profile, in case errors occur in each configured category. This example sets fallback settings to block.

Finally, you enter a timeout value in seconds. Once this limit is reached, fail mode settings are applied. The default is 10 seconds, and you can enter a value from 10 to 240 seconds. This example sets the timeout value to 10.

In the third example configuration, you create UTM policy utmp5 and attach it to profile surfprofile1.

In the final example configuration, you attach the UTM policy utmp5 to the security policy p5.

Configuration

- [Configuring Integrated Web Filtering Custom Objects on page 225](#)
- [Configuring the Integrated Web Filtering Feature Profiles on page 227](#)
- [Configuring Integrated Web Filtering UTM Policies on page 229](#)
- [Attaching Integrated Web Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 230](#)

Configuring Integrated Web Filtering Custom Objects

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist3 value http://www.example.net
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist3 value 1.2.3.4
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllistblack value http://www.untrusted.com
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllistblack value 13.13.13.13
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllistwhite value http://www.trusted.com
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllistwhite value 7.7.7.7
set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custurl3 value urllist3
set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custblacklist value urllistblack
set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custwhitelist value urllistwhite
```



WARNING: Custom category does not take precedence over predefined categories when it has the same name as one of the predefined categories. We do not recommend having a custom category name be the same as the predefined category name.

**Step-by-Step
Procedure**

To configure integrated Web filtering:

1. Create custom objects and create the URL pattern list.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects url-pattern urllist3 value [http://www.example.net
1.2.3.4]
```
2. Configure the custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects custom-url-category custurl3 value urllist3
```
3. Create a list of untrusted sites

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects url-pattern urllistblack value
[http://www.untrusted.com 13.13.13.13]
```
4. Configure the custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list of untrusted sites.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects custom-url-category custblacklist value urllistblack
```
5. Create a list of trusted sites.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects url-pattern urllistwhite value
[http://www.trusted.com 7.7.7.7]
```
6. Configure the custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list of trusted sites.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects custom-url-category custwhitelist value urllistwhite
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm custom-objects** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

For brevity, this show command output includes only the configuration that is relevant to this example. Any other configuration on the system has been replaced with ellipses (...).

```
[edit]
userhost#show security utm custom-objects
url-pattern {
  urllist3 {
    value [ http://www.example.net ];
  }
  urllistblack {
    value [ http://www.untrusted.com 13.13.13.13 ];
  }
  urllistwhite {
    value [ http://www.trusted.com 7.7.7.7 ];
  }
}
custom-url-category {
```

```

    custurl3 {
        value urllist3;
    }
    custblacklist {
        value urllistblack;
    }
    custwhitelist {
        value urllistwhite;
    }
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring the Integrated Web Filtering Feature Profiles

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```

set security utm feature-profile web-filtering url-whitelist custwhitelist
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering url-blacklist custblacklist
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated cache timeout 1800
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated cache size 500
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated server host
    surfcontrolserver
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated server port 8080
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1
    category custurl3 action block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1
    default block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1
    custom-block-message "***access denied ***"
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1
    fallback-settings default block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1
    fallback-settings server-connectivity block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1
    fallback-settings timeout block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1
    fallback-settings too-many-requests block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1
    timeout 10
set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile contentfilter1

```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure integrated Web filtering feature profiles:

1. Configure the Web filtering URL Black List.

```

[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set url-blacklist custblacklist

```

2. Configure the Web filtering URL White List.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set url-whitelist custwhitelist
```
3. Specify the surf-control-integrated Web filtering engine and set the cache size parameters.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set surf-control-integrated cache size 500
```
4. Set the cache timeout parameters.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set surf-control-integrated cache timeout 1800
```
5. Set the server name or IP address.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set surf-control-integrated server host surfcontrolserver
```
6. Enter the port number for communicating with the server.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set surf-control-integrated server port 8080
```
7. Create a profile name and select a category from the included whitelist and blacklist categories.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1 category custurl3 action
block
```
8. Enter a custom message to be sent when HTTP requests are blocked.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1 custom-block-message
"***access denied***"
```
9. Select a default action (permit, log and permit, block) for this profile for requests that experience errors.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1 default block
```
10. Select fallback settings (block or log and permit) for this profile.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1 fallback-settings default
block

user@host# set surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1 fallback-settings
server-connectivity block
user@host# set surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1 fallback-settings timeout
block
user@host# set surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1 fallback-settings
too-many-requests block
```
11. Enter a timeout value, in seconds.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set surf-control-integrated profile surfprofile1 timeout 10
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm feature-profile** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
userhost#show security utm feature-profile
web-filtering {
  url-whitelist custwhitelist;
  url-blacklist custblacklist;
  type juniper-local;
  surf-control-integrated {
    cache {
      timeout 1800;
      size 500;
    }
    server {
      host surfcontrolserver;
      port 8080;
    }
    profile surfprofile1 {
      category {
        custurl3 {
          action block;
        }
      }
      default block;
      custom-block-message "***access denied ***";
      fallback-settings {
        default block;
        server-connectivity block;
        timeout block;
        too-many-requests block;
      }
      timeout 10;
    }
  }
  content-filtering {
    profile contentfilter1;
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring Integrated Web Filtering UTM Policies

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm utm-policy utmp5 web-filtering http-profile surfprofile1
```

Step-by-Step Procedure To configure a UTM policy:

1. Create the UTM policy referencing a profile.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp5 web-filtering http-profile surfprofile1
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm utm-policy** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
userhost#show security utm utm-policy
...
  utm-policy utmp5 {
    content-filtering {
      http-profile contentfilter1;
    }
    web-filtering {
      http-profile surfprofile1;
    }
  }
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Attaching Integrated Web Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 match destination-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 match application junos-http
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 then permit application-services utm-policy utmp5
```

Step-by-Step Procedure To attach a UTM policy to a security policy:

1. Create and configure the security policy.


```
[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5]
user@host# set match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address any
user@host# set match application junos-http
```
2. Attach the UTM policy to the security policy.


```
[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5]
user@host# set then permit application-services utm-policy utmp5
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security policies** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
userhost#show security policies
```

```

from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  policy p5 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application junos-http;
    }
    then {
      permit {
        application-services {
          utm-policy utmp5;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying the Configuration of Integrated Web Filtering Custom Objects on page 231](#)
- [Verifying the Configuration of Integrated Web Filtering Feature Profiles on page 231](#)
- [Verifying the Configuration of Integrated Web Filtering UTM Policies on page 231](#)
- [Verifying the Attachment of Integrated Web Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 232](#)

Verifying the Configuration of Integrated Web Filtering Custom Objects

| | |
|----------------|---|
| Purpose | Verify the configuration of integrated Web filtering custom objects. |
| Action | From the top of the configuration in configuration mode, enter the show security utm custom-objects command. |

Verifying the Configuration of Integrated Web Filtering Feature Profiles

| | |
|----------------|--|
| Purpose | Verify the configuration of integrated Web filtering feature profiles. |
| Action | From the top of the configuration in configuration mode, enter the show security utm feature-profile command. |

Verifying the Configuration of Integrated Web Filtering UTM Policies

| | |
|----------------|--|
| Purpose | Verify the configuration of integrated Web filtering UTM policies. |
| Action | From the top of the configuration in configuration mode, enter the show security utm command. |

Verifying the Attachment of Integrated Web Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies

- Purpose** Verify the attachment of integrated Web filtering UTM policies to security policies.
- Action** From the top of the configuration in configuration mode, enter the **show security policies** command.

Release History Table

| Release | Description |
|-------------|--|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Integrated Web Filtering is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

Related Documentation

- [Web Filtering Overview on page 198](#)
- [Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 240](#)
- [Understanding Local Web Filtering on page 232](#)
- [Understanding Integrated Web Filtering on page 221](#)
- [web-filtering on page 411](#)

Understanding Local Web Filtering

With local Web filtering, the firewall intercepts every HTTP request in a TCP connection and extracts the URL. The decision making is done on the device after it looks up a URL to determine if it is in the whitelist or blacklist based on its user-defined category. If the URL is in the url-blacklist, the request is blocked; if it's in the url-whitelist, the request is permitted. If the URL is not in either list, the defined default action will occur (block, log-and-permit, or permit). You can permit or block access to a requested site by binding a Web filtering profile to a firewall policy. Local Web filtering provides basic Web filtering without requiring an additional license or external category server.

This topic contains the following sections:

- [User-Defined URL Categories on page 232](#)
- [Local Web Filtering Process on page 233](#)
- [Local Web Filtering Profiles on page 233](#)
- [Profile Matching Precedence on page 234](#)

User-Defined URL Categories

When defining your own URL categories, you can group URLs and create categories specific to your needs. Each category can have a maximum of 20 URLs. When you create a category, you can add either the URL or the IP address of a site. When you add a URL to a user-defined category, the device performs DNS lookup, resolves the hostname into IP addresses, and caches this information. When a user tries to access a site with the IP

address of the site, the device checks the cached list of IP addresses and tries to resolve the hostname. Many sites have dynamic IP addresses, meaning that their IP addresses change periodically. A user attempting to access a site can type an IP address that is not in the cached list on the device. Therefore, if you know the IP addresses of sites you are adding to a category, enter both the URL and the IP address(es) of the site.

You define your own categories using URL pattern list and custom URL category list custom objects. Once defined, you assign your categories to the global user-defined url-blacklist (block) or url-whitelist (permit) categories.



NOTE: Web filtering is performed on all the methods defined in HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1.

Local Web Filtering Process

This is a general description of how Web traffic is intercepted and acted upon by the Web filtering module.

1. The device intercepts a TCP connection.
2. The device intercepts each HTTP request in the TCP connection.
3. The device extracts each URL in the HTTP request and checks its URL against the user-defined whitelist and blacklist.
4. If the URL is found in the blacklist, the request is not permitted and a deny page is sent to the http client. If the URL is found in the whitelist, the request is permitted.
5. If the URL is not found in the whitelist or blacklist, the configured default fallback action is applied. If no fallback action is defined, then the request is permitted.

Local Web Filtering Profiles

You configure Web filtering profiles that permit or block URLs according to defined custom categories. A Web filtering profile consists of a group of URL categories assigned one of the following actions:

- **Blacklist** — The device always blocks access to the websites in this list. Only user-defined categories are used with local Web filtering.
- **Whitelist** — The device always allows access to the websites in this list. Only user-defined categories are used with local Web filtering.

A Web filtering profile can contain one blacklist or one whitelist with multiple user-defined categories each with a permit or block action. You can define a default fallback action when the incoming URL does not belong to any of the categories defined in the profile. If the action for the default category is block, the incoming URL is blocked if it does not match any of the categories explicitly defined in the profile. If an action for the default action is not specified, the default action of permit is applied to the incoming URL not matching any category.

Profile Matching Precedence

When a profile employs several categories for URL matching, those categories are checked for matches in the following order:

1. If present, the global blacklist is checked first. If a match is made, the URL is blocked. If no match is found...
2. The global whitelist is checked next. If a match is made, the URL is permitted. If no match is found...
3. User-defined categories are checked next. If a match is made, the URL is blocked or permitted as specified.

Related Documentation

- [Web Filtering Overview on page 198](#)
- [Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 240](#)
- [Example: Configuring Local Web Filtering on page 234](#)

Example: Configuring Local Web Filtering

This example shows how to configure local Web filtering.

- [Requirements on page 234](#)
- [Overview on page 234](#)
- [Configuration on page 235](#)
- [Verification on page 239](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, learn more about Web filtering. See [“Web Filtering Overview” on page 198](#).

Overview

In this example you configure local Web filtering custom objects, local Web filtering feature profiles, and local Web filtering UTM policies. You also attach local Web filtering UTM policies to security policies.

In the first example configuration you create custom objects called `urllist5` and `urllist6` that contains the patterns `http://www.example.net 1.2.3.4` and `http://www.example.com 1.2.3.4` respectively. The `urllist5` and `urllist6` custom objects are then added to the custom URL category `custurl5` and `custurl6`.

In the second example configuration, you configure the Web filtering feature profile. You set the URL blacklist filtering category to `custurl4` and URL whitelist filtering category to `custurl3`. You set the type of Web filtering engine to `juniper-local`.

Then you create a `juniper-local` profile name called `localprofile1`. You select a default action (permit, log and permit, block) for this profile for requests that experience errors. This example sets the default action to permit.

Then you enter a custom message to be sent when HTTP requests are blocked. This example configures the device to send an *****Access to this site is not permitted***** message. You select fallback settings (block or log and permit) for this profile, in case errors occur in each configured category. This example sets fallback settings to block.

In the third example configuration, you create UTM policy utmp5 and attach it to profile localprofile1.

In the final example configuration, you attach the UTM policy utmp5 to the security policy p5.

Configuration

- [Configuring Local Web Filtering Custom Objects on page 235](#)
- [Configuring the Local Web Filtering Feature Profiles on page 236](#)
- [Configuring Local Web Filtering UTM Policies on page 237](#)
- [Attaching Local Web Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 238](#)

Configuring Local Web Filtering Custom Objects

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist5 value http://www.example.net
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist5 value 1.2.3.4
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist6 value http://www.example.com
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist6 value 1.2.3.4
set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custurl5 value urllist5
set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custurl6 value urllist6
```

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure local Web filtering using the CLI:

1. Create custom objects and URL pattern lists.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist5 value
[http://www.example.net 1.2.3.4]
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist6 value
[http://www.example.com 1.2.3.4]
```

2. Configure the custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custurl5 value
urllist5
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custurl6 value
urllist6
```

Results

From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm custom-objects** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
userhost#show security utm custom-objects
url-pattern {
  urllist5 {
    value [ http://www.example.net 1.2.3.4 ];
  }
  urllist6 {
    value [ http://www.example.com 1.2.3.4 ];
  }
}
custom-url-category {
  custurl5 {
    value urllist5;
  }
  custurl6 {
    value urllist6;
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring the Local Web Filtering Feature Profiles

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering url-whitelist custurl3
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering url-blacklist custurl4
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering type juniper-local
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-local profile localprofile1 default
  permit
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-local profile localprofile1
  custom-block-message "Access to this site is not permitted."
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-local profile localprofile1
  fallback-settings default block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-local profile localprofile1
  fallback-settings too-many-requests block
set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile contentfilter1
```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure local Web filtering feature profiles:

1. Configure the Web filtering feature profiles.


```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set url-whitelist custurl3
user@host# set url-blacklist custurl4
```
2. Select the Web filtering engine.


```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
```

```
user@host# set type juniper-local
```

3. Select a default action (permit, log and permit, block) for this profile for requests that experience errors.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-local profile localprofile1 default permit
```

4. Enter a custom message to be sent when HTTP requests are blocked.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-local profile localprofile1 custom-block-message "Access
to this site is not permitted"
```

5. Select fallback settings (block or log and permit) for this profile.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set juniper-local profile localprofile1 fallback-settings default block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-local profile localprofile1
fallback-settings too-many-requests block
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm feature-profile** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
userhost#show security utm feature-profile
web-filtering {
  url-whitelist custurl3;
  url-blacklist custurl4;
  type juniper-local;
  juniper-local {
    profile localprofile1 {
      default permit;
      custom-block-message "Access to this site is not permitted.";
      fallback-settings {
        default block;
        too-many-requests block;
      }
    }
  }
}
content-filtering {
  profile contentfilter1;
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring Local Web Filtering UTM Policies

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
et security utm utm-policy utmp5 web-filtering http-profile localprofile1
```

**Step-by-Step
Procedure**

To configure a UTM policy:

1. Create the UTM policy referencing a profile.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp5 web-filtering http-profile localprofile1
```

Results

From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

For brevity, this show command output includes only the configuration that is relevant to this example. Any other configuration on the system has been replaced with ellipses (...).

[edit]

```
userhost#show security utm
utm-policy utmp5 {
  web-filtering {
    http-profile localprofile1;
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Attaching Local Web Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies

**CLI Quick
Configuration**

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the [edit] hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 match destination-address
any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 match application junos-http
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 then permit
application-services utm-policy utmp5
```

**Step-by-Step
Procedure**

To attach a UTM policy to a security policy:

1. Create and configure the security policy.

[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5]

```
user@host# set match source-address any
```

```
user@host# set match destination-address any
```

```
user@host# set match application junos-http
```

2. Attach the UTM policy to the security policy.

[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5]

```
user@host# set then permit application-services utm-policy utmp5
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security policies** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
userhost#show security policies
  from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
    policy p5 {
      match {
        source-address any;
        destination-address any;
        application junos-http;
      }
      then {
        permit {
          application-services {
            utm-policy utmp5;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying the Configuration of Local Web Filtering Custom Objects on page 239](#)
- [Verifying the Configuration of Local Web Filtering Feature Profiles on page 239](#)
- [Verifying the Configuration of Local Web Filtering UTM Policies on page 239](#)
- [Verifying the Attachment of Local Web Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 240](#)

Verifying the Configuration of Local Web Filtering Custom Objects

Purpose Verify the configuration of local Web filtering custom objects.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security utm custom-objects** command.

Verifying the Configuration of Local Web Filtering Feature Profiles

Purpose Verify the configuration of local Web filtering feature profiles.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security utm feature-profile** command.

Verifying the Configuration of Local Web Filtering UTM Policies

Purpose Verify the configuration of local Web filtering UTM policies.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security utm** command.

Verifying the Attachment of Local Web Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies

Purpose Verify the attachment of local Web filtering UTM policies to security policies.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security policies** command.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding Local Web Filtering on page 232](#)
- [Monitoring Web Filtering Configurations on page 249](#)
- [web-filtering on page 411](#)

Understanding Redirect Web Filtering

With redirect Web filtering, the Web filtering module intercepts an HTTP request. The URL in the request is then sent to the external Websense server, which makes a permit or a deny decision. If access is permitted to the URL in question, the original HTTP request and all the subsequent requests are sent to the intended HTTP server. But if access is denied to the URL in question, a blocking message is sent to the client.

This is a general description of how Web traffic is intercepted, redirected, and acted upon by the Web filtering module:

1. A Web client establishes a TCP connection with the webserver.
2. The Web client then sends an HTTP request.
3. The device intercepts the requests and extract URL. The URL is checked against Global Web filtering whitelists and blacklists. If no match is made, the Websense server configuration parameters are utilized. Otherwise go to step 6.
4. The URL is sent to the Websense server for checking,
5. The Websense server returns a response indicating whether or not the URL is to be permitted or blocked.
6. If access is allowed, then the original HTTP request is sent to the webserver. If access is denied, the device sends a blocking message to the client and tears down the TCP connection.



NOTE: Web filtering is performed on all the methods defined in HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1. However, redirect Web filtering uses destination IP as URL when it is checking HTTPS traffic.



NOTE: Decision making from real-time options provides a higher level of accuracy, therefore caching for redirect Web filtering is not supported.



NOTE: Redirect Web filtering does not require a subscription license.

**Related
Documentation**

- [Web Filtering Overview on page 198](#)
- [Understanding Local Web Filtering on page 232](#)
- [Example: Enhancing Security by Configuring Redirect Web Filtering Using Custom Objects on page 241](#)

Example: Enhancing Security by Configuring Redirect Web Filtering Using Custom Objects

This example shows how to manage Internet usage by configuring redirect Web filtering using custom objects and preventing access to inappropriate Web content.

- [Requirements on page 241](#)
- [Overview on page 241](#)
- [Configuration on page 242](#)
- [Verification on page 247](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, learn more about Web filtering. See “[Web Filtering Overview](#)” on page 198.

Overview

The benefit of using Web filtering is that it extracts the URLs from HTTP request messages and performs filtering according to the requirements. The advantage of configuring redirect Web filtering is that it extracts the URLs from the HTTP requests and sends them to an external URL filtering server to determine whether to allow or deny access.

In this example you configure redirect Web filtering custom objects, redirect Web filtering feature profiles, and redirect Web filtering UTM policies. You also attach redirect Web filtering UTM policies to security policies.

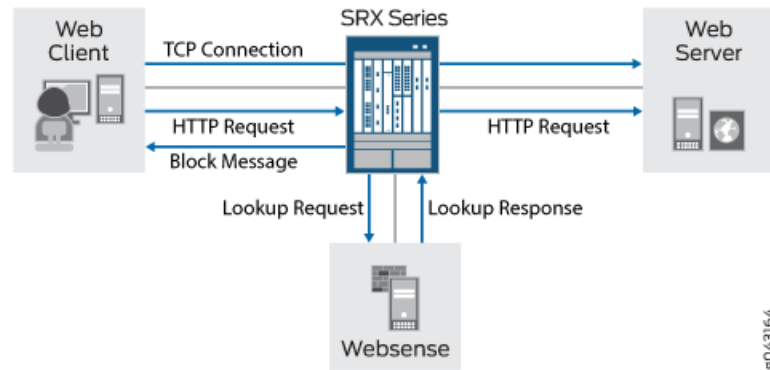
The default websense-redirect server port number is 15868.

You select fallback settings (block or log and permit) for this profile, in case errors occur in each configured category. This example sets fallback settings to block the profile. You enter the number of sockets used for communicating between the client and the server. The default is 32 for SRX Series devices.

Finally, you enter a timeout value in seconds. Once this limit is reached, fail mode settings are applied. The default is 15 seconds, and you can enter a value from 1 to 1800 seconds. This example sets the timeout value to 10.

Figure 1 on page 242 shows the overall architecture for the Websense redirect feature.

Figure 1: Websense Redirect Architecture



Configuration

- [Configuring Redirect Web Filtering Custom Objects on page 242](#)
- [Configuring the Redirect Web Filtering Feature Profiles on page 244](#)
- [Configuring Redirect Web Filtering UTM Policies and Attaching the Redirect Web Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 245](#)

Configuring Redirect Web Filtering Custom Objects

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```

set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist4 value 1.2.3.4
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllistblack value http://www.untrusted.com
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllistblack value 13.13.13.13
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllistwhite value http://www.trusted.com
set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllistwhite value 7.7.7.7
set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custurl4 value urllist4
set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custblacklist value urllistblack
set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custwhitelist value urllistwhite
  
```

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure redirect Web filtering custom objects:

1. Create custom objects and create the URL pattern list.


```

[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects url-pattern urllist4 value [http://www.example.net 1.2.3.4]
      
```
2. Configure the custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list.


```

[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects custom-url-category custurl4 value urllist4
      
```

3. Create a list of untrusted sites

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects url-pattern urllistblack value
[http://www.untrusted.com 13.13.13.13]
```

4. Configure the custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list of untrusted sites.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects custom-url-category custblacklist value urllistblack
```

5. Create a list of trusted sites.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects url-pattern urllistwhite value
[http://www.trusted.com 7.7.7.7]
```

6. Configure the custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list of trusted sites.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set custom-objects custom-url-category custwhitelist value urllistwhite
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm custom-objects** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
userhost# show security utm custom-objects
url-pattern {
  urllist4 {
    value [ http://www.example.net 1.2.3.4 ];
  }
  urllistblack {
    value [ http://www.untrusted.com 13.13.13.13 ];
  }
  urllistwhite {
    value [ http://www.trusted.com 7.7.7.7 ];
  }
}
custom-url-category {
  custurl4 {
    value urllist4;
  }
  custblacklist {
    value urllistblack;
  }
  custwhitelist {
    value urllistwhite;
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring the Redirect Web Filtering Feature Profiles

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering url-whitelist custwhitelist
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering url-blacklist custblacklist
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering type websense-redirect
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1
server host Websenseserver
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1
server port 15868
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1
fallback-settings server-connectivity block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1
fallback-settings timeout block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1
fallback-settings too-many-requests block
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1
timeout 10
set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1
sockets 1
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To configure redirect Web filtering feature profiles:

1. Configure the Web filtering URL Black List.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set url-blacklist custblacklist
```
2. Configure the Web filtering URL White List.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set url-whitelist custwhitelist
```
3. Specify the Web filtering type, create a profile name, and set the server name or IP address.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1 server host
Websenseserver
```
4. Enter the port number for communicating with the server.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1 server port 15868
```
5. Select fallback settings (block or log and permit) for this profile.

```
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1 fallback-settings default
block
```

```

user@host# set websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1 fallback-settings
server-connectivity block
user@host# set websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1 fallback-settings
timeout block
user@host# set websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1 fallback-settings
too-many-requests block

```

6. Enter the number of sockets used for communicating between the client and the server.

```

[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1 sockets 1

```

7. Enter a timeout value, in seconds.

```

[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]
user@host# set .websense-redirect profile websenseprofile1 timeout 10

```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm feature-profile** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```

[edit]
userhost# show security utm feature-profile
web-filtering {
  url-whitelist custwhitelist;
  url-blacklist custblacklist;
  type websense-redirect {
    profile websenseprofile1 {
      server {
        host Websenseserver;
        port 15868;
      }
      fallback-settings {
        server-connectivity block;
        timeout block;
        too-many-requests block;
      }
      timeout 10;
      sockets 1;
    }
  }
}
content-filtering {
  profile contentfilter1;
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring Redirect Web Filtering UTM Policies and Attaching the Redirect Web Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security utm utm-policy utmp6 web-filtering http-profile websenseprofile1
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p6 match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p6 match destination-address
  any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p6 match application junos-http
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p6 then permit
  application-services utm-policy utmp6
```

Step-by-Step Procedure To configure a UTM policy and attach it to a security policy:

1. Create the UTM policy referencing a profile.

```
[edit security utm]
user@host# set utm-policy utmp6 web-filtering http-profile websenseprofile1
```
2. Create and configure the security policy.

```
[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p6]
user@host# set match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address any
user@host# set match application junos-http
```
3. Attach the UTM policy to the security policy.

```
[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p6]
user@host# set then permit application-services utm-policy utmp6
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security utm** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
userhost# show security utm
utm-policy utmp6 {
  web-filtering {
    http-profile websenseprofile1;
  }
}
```

From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security policies** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
userhost# show security policies
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  policy p6 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application junos-http;
    }
    then {
      permit {
        application-services {
          utm-policy utmp6;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

    }
  }
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying the Configuration of Redirect Web Filtering Custom Objects on page 247](#)
- [Verifying the Configuration of Redirect Web Filtering Feature Profiles on page 247](#)
- [Verifying the Attachment of Redirect Web Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies on page 248](#)

Verifying the Configuration of Redirect Web Filtering Custom Objects

| | |
|----------------|---|
| Purpose | Verify the configuration of redirect Web filtering custom objects. |
| Action | <p>From the top of the configuration in configuration mode, enter the show security utm custom-objects command.</p> <pre> [edit] userhost# show security utm custom-objects url-pattern { urllist4 { value [http://www.example.net 1.2.3.4]; } urllistblack { value [http://www.untrusted.com 13.13.13.13]; } urllistwhite { value [http://www.trusted.com 7.7.7.7]; } } custom-url-category { custurl4 { value urllist4; } custblacklist { value urllistblack; } custwhitelist { value urllistwhite; } } </pre> |
| Meaning | The sample output shows the list of custom objects created. |

Verifying the Configuration of Redirect Web Filtering Feature Profiles

| | |
|----------------|--|
| Purpose | Verify the configuration of redirect Web filtering feature profiles. |
|----------------|--|

Action From the top of the configuration in configuration mode, enter the **show security utm feature-profile** command.

```
[edit]
userhost# show security utm feature-profile
web-filtering {
  url-whitelist custwhitelist;
  url-blacklist custblacklist;
  type websense-redirect {
    profile websenseprofile1 {
      server {
        host Websenseserver;
        port 15868;
      }
      fallback-settings {
        server-connectivity block;
        timeout block;
        too-many-requests block;
      }
      timeout 10;
      sockets 1;
    }
  }
}
content-filtering {
  profile contentfilter1;
}
```

Meaning The sample output shows the feature profile configured for a Websense redirect server.

Verifying the Attachment of Redirect Web Filtering UTM Policies to Security Policies

Purpose Verify the attachment of the newly created redirect Web filtering UTM policies to the security policies.

Action From the top of the configuration in configuration mode, enter the **show security utm** and **show security policies** commands.

```
[edit]
userhost# show security utm
utm-policy utmp6 {
  web-filtering {
    http-profile websenseprofile1;
  }
}

[edit]
userhost# show security policies
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  policy p6 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
```



```

        application junos-http;
    }
    then {
        permit {
            application-services {
                utm-policy utmp6;
            }
        }
    }
}

```

Meaning The sample output shows the security policies to which the newly created redirect Web filtering UTM policies are attached.

- Related Documentation**
- [Web Filtering Overview on page 198](#)
 - [Understanding Local Web Filtering on page 232](#)
 - [web-filtering on page 411](#)
 - [Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 240](#)

Displaying Global SurfControl URL categories

Purpose The Surf-Control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, view global URL categories defined and maintained by SurfControl.

Action Enter the `user@host# show groups junos-defaults` CLI command. You can also look for `custom-url-category`.

Release History Table

| Release | Description |
|-------------|--|
| 15.1X49-D10 | The Surf-Control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. |

- Related Documentation**
- [Web Filtering Overview on page 198](#)
 - [Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 240](#)
 - [Understanding Local Web Filtering on page 232](#)
 - [Understanding Integrated Web Filtering on page 221](#)

Monitoring Web Filtering Configurations

Purpose View Web-filtering statistics.

Action To view Web-filtering statistics using the CLI, enter the following commands:

```
user@host> show security utm web-filtering status
```

```
user@host> show security utm web-filtering statistics
```

To view Web-filtering statistics using J-Web:

1. Select **Clear Web Filtering Statistics**.

The following information is displayed in the right pane.

```
Total Requests: #
White List Hit: #
Black List Hit: #
Queries to Server: #
Server Reply Permit: #
Server Reply Block: #
Custom Category Permit: #
Custom Category Block: #
Cache Hit Permit: #
Cache Hit Block: #
Web Filtering Session Total: #
Web Filtering Session Inuse: #
Fall Back: Log-and-Permit Block
Default # #
Timeout # #
Server-Connectivity # #
Too-Many-Requests # #
```

2. You can click the **Clear Web Filtering Statistics** button to clear all current viewable statistics and begin collecting new statistics.

- Related Documentation**
- [Web Filtering Overview](#)
 - [Example: Configuring Local Web Filtering](#)

PART 8

Configuration Statements and Operational Commands

- Configuration Statements on page 253
- Operational Commands on page 415

CHAPTER 21

Configuration Statements

- [action \(Security UTM Web Filtering\) on page 258](#)
- [address-blacklist on page 259](#)
- [address-whitelist on page 259](#)
- [admin-email on page 260](#)
- [administrator-email \(Security Fallback Block\) on page 260](#)
- [administrator-email \(Security Virus Detection\) on page 261](#)
- [allow-email \(Security Fallback Block\) on page 261](#)
- [allow-email \(Security Virus Detection\) on page 262](#)
- [application \(Security Policies\) on page 262](#)
- [application-proxy \(Security UTM\) on page 263](#)
- [anti-spam \(Security Feature Profile\) on page 263](#)
- [anti-spam \(Security UTM Policy\) on page 264](#)
- [anti-virus \(Security Feature Profile\) on page 265](#)
- [anti-virus \(Security UTM Policy\) on page 269](#)
- [block-command on page 269](#)
- [block-content-type on page 270](#)
- [block-extension on page 270](#)
- [block-message \(Security UTM\) on page 271](#)
- [block-mime on page 271](#)
- [cache on page 272](#)
- [category \(Security Logging\) on page 273](#)
- [category \(Security Web Filtering\) on page 274](#)
- [content-filtering \(Security Feature Profile\) on page 280](#)
- [content-filtering \(Security UTM Policy\) on page 281](#)
- [content-size on page 282](#)
- [content-size \(Security Antivirus Sophos Engine\) on page 283](#)
- [content-size-limit on page 284](#)
- [corrupt-file on page 284](#)

- [custom-block-message](#) on page 285
- [custom-message](#) (Security Content Filtering) on page 285
- [custom-message](#) (Security Email Notify) on page 286
- [custom-message](#) (Security Fallback Block) on page 286
- [custom-message](#) (Security Fallback Non-Block) on page 287
- [custom-message](#) (Security Virus Detection) on page 287
- [custom-message-subject](#) (Security Email Notify) on page 288
- [custom-message-subject](#) (Security Fallback Block) on page 288
- [custom-message-subject](#) (Security Fallback Non-Block) on page 289
- [custom-message-subject](#) (Security Virus Detection) on page 289
- [custom-objects](#) on page 290
- [custom-tag-string](#) on page 290
- [custom-url-category](#) on page 291
- [decompress-layer](#) on page 292
- [decompress-layer-limit](#) on page 292
- [default](#) (Security Antivirus) on page 293
- [default](#) (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine) on page 293
- [default](#) (Security UTM) on page 294
- [default](#) (Security Web Filtering) on page 295
- [display-host](#) (Security Fallback Block) on page 296
- [display-host](#) (Security Virus Detection) on page 296
- [download-profile](#) (Security Antivirus FTP) on page 296
- [download-profile](#) (Security Content Filtering FTP) on page 297
- [email-notify](#) on page 297
- [engine-not-ready](#) on page 298
- [engine-not-ready](#) (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine) on page 298
- [exception](#) (Security Antivirus Mime Whitelist) on page 299
- [exception](#) (Security Content Filtering) on page 299
- [fallback-block](#) (Security Antivirus) on page 300
- [fallback-non-block](#) (Security Antivirus) on page 301
- [fallback-options](#) (Security Antivirus Juniper Express Engine) on page 302
- [fallback-options](#) (Security Antivirus Kaspersky Lab Engine) on page 303
- [fallback-options](#) (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine) on page 304
- [fallback-settings](#) (Security Web Filtering) on page 304
- [fallback-settings](#) (Security Web Filtering Juniper Local) on page 305
- [fallback-settings](#) (Security Web Filtering Websense Redirect) on page 305
- [feature-profile](#) on page 306

- [filename-extension](#) on page 313
- [flag \(SMTP\)](#) on page 314
- [format \(Security Log Stream\)](#) on page 315
- [from-zone \(Security Policies\)](#) on page 316
- [ftp \(UTM Policy Anti-Virus\)](#) on page 318
- [ftp \(UTM Policy Content Filtering\)](#) on page 319
- [host \(Security Web Filtering\)](#) on page 319
- [http-profile \(Security Antivirus\)](#) on page 320
- [http-profile \(Security Content Filtering\)](#) on page 320
- [http-profile \(Security Web Filtering\)](#) on page 320
- [imap-profile \(Security UTM Policy Antivirus\)](#) on page 321
- [imap-profile \(Security UTM Policy Content Filtering\)](#) on page 321
- [intelligent-prescreening](#) on page 322
- [interval \(Security Antivirus\)](#) on page 323
- [ipc](#) on page 324
- [juniper-enhanced](#) on page 325
- [juniper-express-engine](#) on page 326
- [juniper-local](#) on page 327
- [kaspersky-lab-engine](#) on page 328
- [limit \(UTM Policy\)](#) on page 329
- [list \(Security Antivirus Mime Whitelist\)](#) on page 330
- [list \(Security Content Filtering Block Mime\)](#) on page 330
- [log \(Security\)](#) on page 331
- [mime-pattern](#) on page 334
- [mime-whitelist](#) on page 335
- [no-autoupdate](#) on page 336
- [no-intelligent-prescreening](#) on page 337
- [no-notify-mail-recipient](#) on page 338
- [no-notify-mail-sender \(Security Content Filtering Notification Options\)](#) on page 338
- [no-notify-mail-sender \(Security Fallback Block\)](#) on page 339
- [no-notify-mail-sender \(Security Virus Detection\)](#) on page 340
- [no-sbl-default-server](#) on page 340
- [notification-options \(Security Antivirus\)](#) on page 341
- [notification-options \(Security Content Filtering\)](#) on page 342
- [notify-mail-recipient](#) on page 342
- [notify-mail-sender \(Security Content Filtering Notification Options\)](#) on page 343
- [notify-mail-sender \(Security Fallback Block\)](#) on page 343

- [notify-mail-sender \(Security Virus Detection\) on page 344](#)
- [no-uri-check on page 344](#)
- [out-of-resources on page 345](#)
- [out-of-resources \(Security Antivirus Sophos Engine\) on page 345](#)
- [over-limit on page 346](#)
- [packet-filter on page 347](#)
- [password \(Security Antivirus\) on page 348](#)
- [password-file on page 348](#)
- [pattern-update \(Security Antivirus\) on page 349](#)
- [permit-command on page 349](#)
- [policies on page 350](#)
- [pop3-profile \(Security UTM Policy Antivirus\) on page 354](#)
- [pop3-profile \(Security UTM Policy Content Filtering\) on page 354](#)
- [port \(Security Antivirus\) on page 355](#)
- [port \(Security Web Filtering Server\) on page 355](#)
- [primary-server on page 356](#)
- [profile \(Security Antispam SBL\) on page 356](#)
- [profile \(Security Antivirus Juniper Express Engine\) on page 357](#)
- [profile \(Security Antivirus Kaspersky Lab Engine\) on page 359](#)
- [profile \(Security Content Filtering\) on page 360](#)
- [profile \(Security Sophos Engine Antivirus\) on page 361](#)
- [profile \(Security Web Filtering Juniper Enhanced\) on page 362](#)
- [profile \(Security Web Filtering Juniper Local\) on page 363](#)
- [profile \(Security Web Filtering Surf Control Integrated\) on page 364](#)
- [profile \(Security Web Filtering Websense Redirect\) on page 365](#)
- [protocol-command on page 366](#)
- [proxy \(Security Antivirus\) on page 366](#)
- [quarantine-message \(Security UTM\) on page 367](#)
- [sbl on page 367](#)
- [sbl-default-server on page 368](#)
- [scan-extension on page 368](#)
- [scan-mode on page 369](#)
- [scan-options \(Security Antivirus Juniper Express Engine\) on page 369](#)
- [scan-options \(Security Antivirus Kaspersky Lab Engine\) on page 370](#)
- [scan-options \(Security Antivirus Sophos Engine\) on page 370](#)
- [secondary-server on page 371](#)
- [server \(Security Antivirus\) on page 371](#)

- [server \(Security Web Filtering\)](#) on page 372
- [server-connectivity](#) on page 372
- [sessions-per-client](#) on page 373
- [site-reputation-action](#) on page 374
- [size \(Security Web Filtering Cache\)](#) on page 375
- [smtp-profile \(Security UTM Policy Antispam\)](#) on page 375
- [smtp-profile \(Security UTM Policy Antivirus\)](#) on page 375
- [smtp-profile \(Security UTM Policy Content Filtering\)](#) on page 376
- [sockets](#) on page 376
- [sophos-engine](#) on page 377
- [spam-action](#) on page 378
- [surf-control-integrated](#) on page 379
- [sxl-retry](#) on page 380
- [sxl-timeout](#) on page 380
- [timeout \(Security Antivirus Fallback Options\)](#) on page 381
- [timeout \(Security Antivirus Fallback Options Sophos Engine\)](#) on page 381
- [timeout \(Security Antivirus Scan Options\)](#) on page 382
- [timeout \(Security Web Filtering\)](#) on page 382
- [timeout \(Security Web Filtering Cache\)](#) on page 383
- [timeout \(Security Web Filtering Fallback Settings\)](#) on page 383
- [too-many-requests \(Security Antivirus Fallback Options\)](#) on page 384
- [too-many-requests \(Security Antivirus Fallback Options Sophos Engine\)](#) on page 384
- [too-many-requests \(Security Web Filtering Fallback Settings\)](#) on page 385
- [to-zone \(Security Policies\)](#) on page 386
- [traceoptions \(Security Antispam\)](#) on page 388
- [traceoptions \(Security Antivirus\)](#) on page 389
- [traceoptions \(Security Application Proxy\)](#) on page 390
- [traceoptions \(Security Content Filtering\)](#) on page 391
- [traceoptions \(Security UTM\)](#) on page 391
- [traceoptions \(Security Web Filtering\)](#) on page 392
- [traceoptions \(SMTP\)](#) on page 393
- [traffic-options](#) on page 393
- [trickling](#) on page 394
- [type \(Security Antivirus Feature Profile\)](#) on page 394
- [type \(Security Content Filtering Notification Options\)](#) on page 395
- [type \(Security Fallback Block\)](#) on page 395
- [type \(Security Virus Detection\)](#) on page 396

- [type \(Security Web Filtering\) on page 396](#)
- [upload-profile \(Security Antivirus FTP\) on page 397](#)
- [upload-profile \(Security Content Filtering FTP\) on page 397](#)
- [uri-check on page 397](#)
- [url \(Security Antivirus\) on page 398](#)
- [url-blacklist on page 398](#)
- [url-pattern on page 399](#)
- [url-whitelist \(Security Antivirus\) on page 399](#)
- [url-whitelist \(Security Web Filtering\) on page 400](#)
- [username \(Security Antivirus\) on page 400](#)
- [utm on page 401](#)
- [utm-policy on page 409](#)
- [utm-policy \(Application Services\) on page 410](#)
- [virus-detection \(Security Antivirus\) on page 410](#)
- [web-filtering on page 411](#)
- [websense-redirect on page 414](#)

action (Security UTM Web Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | action (block log-and-permit permit quarantine); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile <i>profile-name</i> category <i>customurl-last-name</i>]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i> category <i>customurl-last-name</i>] |
| Release Information | The Surf-Control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for UTM Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Enter an action to go with the customurl-list filter. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block—Log the error and deny the traffic.• log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic.• permit—Permit the traffic.• quarantine—Show the warning message and permit/block the traffic based on user input. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

address-blacklist

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | address-blacklist <i>list-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-spam] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Enter an address blacklist (or whitelist) custom object for local list spam filtering. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

address-whitelist

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | address-whitelist <i>list-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-spam] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Enter an address-whitelist (or blacklist) custom-object for local list spam filtering. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

admin-email

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | admin-email <i>email-address</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update email-notify]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update email-notify]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update email-notify] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | You can configure the device to notify a specified administrator when patterns are updated. This is an e-mail notification with a custom message and a custom subject line. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

administrator-email (Security Fallback Block)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | administrator-email <i>email-address</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Configure the administrator e-mail address that will be notified when a fallback-block occurs. This is an e-mail notification with a custom message and a custom subject line. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

administrator-email (Security Virus Detection)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | administrator-email <i>email address</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile name</i> notification-options virus-detection] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Configure the administrator e-mail address that will be notified when a virus is detected by Sophos antivirus. This is an e-mail notification with a custom message and a custom subject line. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

allow-email (Security Fallback Block)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | allow-email; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Enable e-mail notification to notify a specified administrator when a fallback-block occurs. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

allow-email (Security Virus Detection)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | allow-email; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus profile notification-options virus-detect] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Enable e-mail notification to notify a specified administrator when a virus is detected. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

application (Security Policies)

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Syntax | application {
[<i>application</i>];
any;
} |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> match]
[edit security policies global policy <i>policy-name</i> match] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. |
| Description | Specify the IP or remote procedure call (RPC) application or set of applications to be used as match criteria. |
| Options | <i>application-name-or-set</i> —Name of the predefined or custom application or application set used as match criteria.

<i>any</i> —Any predefined or custom applications or application sets. |



NOTE: A custom application that does not use a well-known destination port for the application will not be included in the *any* option, and must be named explicitly.

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Security Policies Overview</i> |

application-proxy (Security UTM)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre> application-proxy { traceoptions { flag <i>flag</i>; } }</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Configure trace options for the application proxy. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

anti-spam (Security Feature Profile)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre> anti-spam { address-blacklist <i>list-name</i>; address-whitelist <i>list-name</i>; sbl { profile <i>profile-name</i> { custom-tag-string [<i>string</i>]; (sbl-default-server no-sbl-default-server); spam-action (block tag-header tag-subject); } } traceoptions flag <i>flag</i>; }</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure UTM antispam features. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

anti-spam (Security UTM Policy)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | anti-spam {
smtp-profile <i>profile-name</i> ;
} |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the antispam SMTP protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

anti-virus (Security Feature Profile)

```

Syntax  anti-virus {
        juniper-express-engine {
            pattern-update {
                email-notify {
                    admin-email email-address;
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                }
                interval value;
                no-autoupdate;
                proxy {
                    password password-string;
                    port port-number;
                    server address-or-url;
                    username name;
                }
                url url;
            }
        }
        profile profile-name {
            fallback-options {
                content-size (block | log-and-permit);
                default (block | log-and-permit);
                engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit);
                out-of-resources (block | (log-and-permit));
                timeout (block | log-and-permit);
                too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
            }
            notification-options {
                fallback-block {
                    administrator-email email-address;
                    allow-email;
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    display-host;
                    (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                    type (message | protocol-only);
                }
                fallback-non-block {
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
                }
                virus-detection {
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                    type (message | protocol-only);
                }
            }
            scan-options {
                content-size-limit value;
                (intelligent-prescreening | no-intelligent-prescreening);
            }
        }
    }

```

```
        timeout value;
    }
    trickling {
        timeout value;
    }
}
}
kaspersky-lab-engine {
    pattern-update {
        email-notify {
            admin-email email-address;
            custom-message message;
            custom-message-subject message-subject;
        }
        interval value;
        no-autoupdate;
        proxy {
            password password-string;
            port port-number;
            server address-or-url;
            username name;
        }
        url url;
    }
    profile profile-name {
        fallback-options {
            content-size (block | log-and-permit);
            corrupt-file (block | log-and-permit);
            decompress-layer (block | log-and-permit);
            default (block | log-and-permit);
            engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit);
            out-of-resources (block | (log-and-permit);
            password-file (block | (log-and-permit);
            timeout (block | log-and-permit);
            too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
        }
        notification-options {
            fallback-block {
                administrator-email email-address;
                allow-email;
                custom-message message;
                custom-message-subject message-subject;
                display-host;
                (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                type (message | protocol-only);
            }
            fallback-non-block {
                custom-message message;
                custom-message-subject message-subject;
                (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
            }
        }
        virus-detection {
            custom-message message;
            custom-message-subject message-subject;
            (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
            type (message | protocol-only);
        }
    }
}
```

```

    }
  }
  scan-options {
    content-size-limit value;
    decompress-layer-limit value;
    (intelligent-prescreening | no-intelligent-prescreening);
    scan-extension filename;
    scan-mode (all | by-extension);
    timeout value;
  }
  trickling {
    timeout value;
  }
}
mime-whitelist {
  exception listname;
  list listname {
    exception listname;
  }
}
sophos-engine {
  pattern-update {
    email-notify {
      admin-email email-address;
      custom-message message;
      custom-message-subject message-subject;
    }
  }
  interval value;
  no-autoupdate;
  proxy {
    password password-string;
    port port-number;
    server address-or-url;
    username name;
  }
  url url;
}
profile <name> {
  fallback-options {
    content-size (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    default (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    out-of-resources (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    timeout (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit | permit);
  }
  notification-options {
    fallback-block {
      administrator-email email-address;
      allow-email;
      custom-message message;
      custom-message-subject message-subject;
      display-host;
      (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
      type (message | protocol-only);
    }
  }
}

```

```
    }
    fallback-non-block {
        custom-message message;
        custom-message-subject message-subject;
        (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
    }
    virus-detection {
        custom-message message;
        custom-message-subject message-subject;
        (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
        type (message | protocol-only);
    }
}
scan-options {
    content-size-limit value;
    (no-uri-check | uri-check);
    timeout value;
}
trickling {
    timeout value;
}
}
sxl-retry value;
sxl-timeout seconds;
}
traceoptions flag flag;
type (juniper-express-engine | kaspersky-lab-engine | sophos-engine);
url-whitelist listname;
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm feature-profile]

Release Information The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.

Description Configure UTM antivirus full and express features.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

anti-virus (Security UTM Policy)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre> anti-virus { ftp { download-profile <i>profile-name</i>; upload-profile <i>profile-name</i>; } http-profile <i>profile-name</i>; imap-profile <i>profile-name</i>; pop3-profile <i>profile-name</i>; smtp-profile <i>profile-name</i>; } </pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the antivirus protocols and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

block-command

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | block-command <i>protocol-command-list</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Apply protocol block command custom-objects to the content-filtering profile. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

block-content-type

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | block-content-type (activex exe http-cookie java-applet zip); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Apply blocks to other available content such as exe, http-cookie, java-applet. This is for HTTP only. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• activex—Block ActiveX.• exe—Block EXE files.• http-cookie—Block cookies.• java-applet—Block Java applets.• zip—Block ZIP files. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

block-extension

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | block-extension <i>extension-list</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Apply block extensions to the content-filtering profile. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

block-message (Security UTM)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>block-message { type { custom-redirect-url; } url <i>url</i>; }</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.
Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Configure Juniper enhanced block message settings. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • type—Specify the following type of the block message: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • custom-redirect-url—Specify Custom redirect URL server. • url <i>url</i>—Specify an URL of the block message. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

block-mime

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre>block-mime { exception <i>list-name</i>; list <i>list-name</i>; }</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Apply MIME pattern list custom-objects to the content-filtering profile for blocking MIME types. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

cache

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | cache {
size <i>value</i> ;
timeout <i>value</i> ;
} |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced] |
| Release Information | The Surf-Control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. for surf-control integrated.
Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Set the cache parameters for Surf-Control-Integrated Web filtering and Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

category (Security Logging)

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Syntax | category (all content-security fw-auth screen alg nat flow sctp gtp ipsec idp rtlog pst-ds-lite appqos secintel) |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security log stream <i>stream-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 10.0. Statement modified in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40. |
| Description | Set the category of logging to all or content-security . Note that for the WELF format, the category must be set to content-security . |



NOTE: On SRX5600 and SRX5800 devices, if the stream configuration does not specify a destination port, the default destination port will be the system log port. If you specify a destination port in the stream configuration, then that port will be used instead.

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all—All events are logged. • content-security—Only content security events are logged. • fw-auth—Firewall authentication events are logged. • screen—Screen events are logged. • alg—Application Layer Gateway (ALG) events are logged. • nat—Network Address Translation (NAT) events are logged. • flow—Flow events are logged. • sctp—Stream Control Transmission Protocol (SCTP) events are logged. • gtp—GTP events are logged. • ipsec—IPsec events are logged. • idp—Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) events are logged. • rtlog—RTLOG system log events are logged. • pst-ds-lite—PST dual-stack lite (DS-Lite) events are logged. • appqos—Application quality of service (AppQoS) events are logged. • secintel—Juniper Networks Security Intelligence (SecIntel) events are logged. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>AppSecure Services Feature Guide for Security Devices</i> • <i>Logical Systems Feature Guide for Security Devices</i> |

category (Security Web Filtering)

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <code>category <i>customurl-list name</i> {
 action (block log-and-permit permit quarantine);
}</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile <i>profile-name</i>]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | The Surf-Control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.
Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. Support for new categories and category name updates by Websense added in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D15 and 12.3X48-D10. |
| Description | Select a custom URL category list you created (custom objects) for filtering against. |

Table 6: List of Categories Predefined by Websense

| Category ID | Category Name | Parent ID |
|-------------|-------------------------|-----------|
| 1 | Adult Material | 0 |
| 2 | Business and Economy | 0 |
| 3 | Education | 0 |
| 4 | Government | 0 |
| 5 | News and Media | 0 |
| 6 | Religion | 0 |
| 7 | Society and Lifestyles | 0 |
| 8 | Special Events | 0 |
| 9 | Information Technology | 0 |
| 10 | Abortion | 0 |
| 11 | Advocacy Groups | 0 |
| 12 | Entertainment | 0 |
| 13 | Gambling | 0 |
| 14 | Games | 0 |
| 15 | Illegal or Questionable | 0 |
| 16 | Job Search | 0 |
| 17 | Shopping | 0 |
| 18 | Sports | 0 |
| 19 | Tasteless | 0 |
| 20 | Travel | 0 |
| 21 | Vehicles | 0 |
| 22 | Violence | 0 |
| 23 | Weapons | 0 |
| 24 | Drugs | 0 |

Table 6: List of Categories Predefined by Websense (*continued*)

| Category ID | Category Name | Parent ID |
|-------------|-----------------------------|-----------|
| 25 | Militancy and Extremist | 0 |
| 26 | Intolerance | 0 |
| 27 | Health | 0 |
| 28 | Website Translation | 9 |
| 29 | Advertisements | 110 |
| 64 | User-Defined | 0 |
| 65 | Nudity | 1 |
| 66 | Adult Content | 1 |
| 67 | Sex | 1 |
| 68 | Financial Data and Services | 2 |
| 69 | Cultural Institutions | 3 |
| 70 | Media File Download | 12 |
| 72 | Military | 4 |
| 73 | Political Organizations | 4 |
| 74 | General Email | 91 |
| 75 | Proxy Avoidance | 9 |
| 76 | Search Engines and Portals | 9 |
| 78 | Web Hosting | 9 |
| 79 | Web Chat | 91 |
| 80 | Hacking | 9 |
| 81 | Alternative Journals | 5 |
| 82 | Non-Traditional Religions | 6 |
| 83 | Traditional Religions | 6 |
| 84 | Restaurants and Dining | 7 |

Table 6: List of Categories Predefined by Websense (*continued*)

| Category ID | Category Name | Parent ID |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| 85 | Gay or Lesbian or Bisexual Interest | 7 |
| 86 | Personals and Dating | 7 |
| 87 | Alcohol and Tobacco | 7 |
| 88 | Prescribed Medications | 24 |
| 89 | Nutrition | 24 |
| 90 | Abused Drugs | 24 |
| 91 | Internet Communication | 0 |
| 92 | Pro-Choice | 10 |
| 93 | Pro-Life | 10 |
| 94 | Sex Education | 1 |
| 95 | Lingerie and Swimsuit | 1 |
| 96 | Online Brokerage and Trading | 110 |
| 97 | Educational Institutions | 3 |
| 98 | Instant Messaging | 110 |
| 99 | Application and Software Download | 110 |
| 100 | Pay-to-Surf | 110 |
| 101 | Internet Auctions | 17 |
| 102 | Real Estate | 17 |
| 103 | Hobbies | 7 |
| 107 | Sport Hunting and Gun Clubs | 18 |
| 108 | Internet Telephony | 116 |
| 109 | Streaming Media | 116 |
| 110 | Productivity | 0 |
| 111 | Marijuana | 24 |

Table 6: List of Categories Predefined by Websense (*continued*)

| Category ID | Category Name | Parent ID |
|-------------|---|-----------|
| 112 | Message Boards and Forums | 110 |
| 113 | Personal Network Storage and Backup | 116 |
| 114 | Internet Radio and TV | 116 |
| 115 | Peer-to-Peer File Sharing | 116 |
| 116 | Bandwidth | 0 |
| 117 | Social Networking and Personal Sites | 7 |
| 118 | Educational Materials | 3 |
| 121 | Reference Materials | 3 |
| 122 | Social Organizations | 0 |
| 123 | Service and Philanthropic Organizations | 122 |
| 124 | Social and Affiliation Organizations | 122 |
| 125 | Professional and Worker Organizations | 122 |
| 126 | Security | 0 |
| 128 | Malicious Web Sites | 126 |
| 138 | Computer Security | 9 |
| 146 | Miscellaneous | 0 |
| 147 | Web Infrastructure | 146 |
| 148 | Web Images | 146 |
| 149 | Private IP Addresses | 146 |
| 150 | Content Delivery Networks | 146 |
| 151 | Dynamic Content | 146 |
| 152 | Network Errors | 146 |
| 153 | Uncategorized | 146 |
| 154 | Spyware | 126 |

Table 6: List of Categories Predefined by Websense (*continued*)

| Category ID | Category Name | Parent ID |
|-------------|-------------------------------|-----------|
| 156 | File Download Servers | 146 |
| 164 | Phishing and Other Frauds | 126 |
| 166 | Keyloggers | 126 |
| 167 | Potentially Unwanted Software | 126 |
| 172 | Bot Networks | 126 |
| 191 | Extended Protection | 0 |
| 192 | Elevated Exposure | 191 |
| 193 | Emerging Exploits | 191 |
| 194 | Suspicious Content | 191 |
| 195 | Organizational Email | 91 |
| 196 | Text and media messaging | 91 |
| 200 | Web and Email Spam | 9 |
| 220 | Compromised Websites | 0 |
| 221 | Newly Registered Websites | 0 |
| 222 | Collaboration Office | 0 |
| 223 | Office Mail | 222 |
| 224 | Office Drive | 222 |
| 225 | Office Documents | 222 |
| 226 | Office Apps | 222 |
| 227 | Web Analytics | 9 |
| 228 | Web and Email Marketing | 9 |
| 1529 | Classifieds Posting | 0 |
| 1530 | Blog Posting | 0 |
| 1531 | Blog Commenting | 0 |

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege security—To view this statement in the configuration.
Level security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related
Documentation**

content-filtering (Security Feature Profile)

Syntax

```
content-filtering {  
  profile profile-name {  
    block-command protocol-command-list;  
    block-content-type (activex | exe | http-cookie | java-applet | zip);  
    block-extension extension-list;  
    block-mime {  
      exception list-name;  
      list list-name;  
    }  
    notification-options {  
      custom-message message;  
      (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);  
      type (message | protocol-only);  
    }  
    permit-command protocol-command-list;  
  }  
  traceoptions flag flag;  
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm feature-profile]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .

Description Configure UTM content-filtering features.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege security—To view this statement in the configuration.
Level security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

content-filtering (Security UTM Policy)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>content-filtering {
 ftp {
 download-profile <i>profile-name</i>;
 upload-profile <i>profile-name</i>;
 }
 http-profile <i>profile-name</i>;
 imap-profile <i>profile-name</i>;
 pop3-profile <i>profile-name</i>;
 smtp-profile <i>profile-name</i>;
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the content-filtering protocols and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

content-size

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| Syntax | content-size (block log-and-permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | If the content size exceeds a set limit, the content is either passed or blocked. The default action is log-and-permit. |



NOTE: When you configure the content-size value, keep in mind that in certain cases, content size is available in the protocol headers, so the max-content-size fallback is applied before a scan request is sent. However, in many cases, content size is not provided in the protocol headers. In these cases, the TCP payload is sent to the antivirus scanner and accumulates until the end of the payload. If the accumulated payload exceeds the maximum content size value, then max-content-size fallback is applied. The default fallback action is log and permit, so you may want to change this option to block, in which case such a packet is dropped and a block message is sent to the client.

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block—Log the error and deny the traffic• log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

content-size (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine)

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Syntax | content-size (block log-and-permit permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | If the content size exceeds a set limit, the content is either passed or blocked. |



NOTE: When you configure the content-size value, keep in mind that in certain cases, content size is available in the protocol headers, so the max-content-size fallback is applied before a scan request is sent. However, in many cases, content size is not provided in the protocol headers. In these cases, the TCP payload is sent to the antivirus scanner and accumulates until the end of the payload. If the accumulated payload exceeds the maximum content size value, then max-content-size fallback is applied. You might want to set the fallback action to block, in which case such a packet is dropped and a block message is sent to the client.

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • block—Log the error and deny the traffic • log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic • permit—Permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155 |

content-size-limit

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | content-size-limit <i>value</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | The content size check occurs before the scan request is sent. The content size refers to accumulated TCP payload size.

Range: 20 through 20,000 |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

corrupt-file

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | corrupt-file (block log-and-permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Release Information | The Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Corrupt file is the error returned by the scan engine when engine detects a corrupted file. The default action is log-and-permit. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block—Log the error and deny the traffic• log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Full Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 72 |

custom-block-message

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | custom-block-message <i>value</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile <i>profile-name</i>]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | The Surf-Control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.
For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.
Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Enter a custom message to be sent when HTTP requests are blocked. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

custom-message (Security Content Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | custom-message <i>message</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Custom message notifications are generally used when content is blocked by the content filter. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Content Filtering Overview on page 179 |

custom-message (Security Email Notify)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | custom-message <i>message</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update email-notify]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update email-notify]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update email-notify] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | You can configure the device to notify a specified administrator when patterns are updated. This is an e-mail notification with a custom message. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

custom-message (Security Fallback Block)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | custom-message <i>message</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Custom message notifications are mainly used in file replacement or in a response message when the antivirus scan result is to drop the file. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

custom-message (Security Fallback Non-Block)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | custom-message <i>message</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-non-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-non-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-non-block] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Custom message notifications are mainly used in file replacement or in a response message when the antivirus scan result is to drop the file. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

custom-message (Security Virus Detection)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | custom-message <i>message</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Custom message notifications are mainly used in file replacement or in a response message when the antivirus scan result is to drop the file. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

custom-message-subject (Security Email Notify)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | custom-message-subject <i>message-subject</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update email-notify]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update email-notify]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update email-notify] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | You can configure the device to notify a specified administrator when patterns are updated. This is an e-mail notification with a custom message and a custom subject line. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

custom-message-subject (Security Fallback Block)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | custom-message-subject <i>message-subject</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Custom message notifications are mainly used in file replacement or in a response message when the antivirus scan result is to drop the file. As part of a custom message, you can customize the message subject line. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

custom-message-subject (Security Fallback Non-Block)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | custom-message-subject <i>message-subject</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-non-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-non-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-non-block] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Custom message notifications are mainly used in file replacement or in a response message when the antivirus scan result is to drop the file. As part of a custom message, you can customize the message subject line. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

custom-message-subject (Security Virus Detection)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | custom-message-subject <i>message-subject</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Custom message notifications are mainly used in file replacement or in a response message when the antivirus scan result is to drop the file. As part of a custom message, you can customize the message subject line. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

custom-objects

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre> custom-objects { custom-url-category <i>object-name</i> { value [<i>value</i>]; } filename-extension <i>object-name</i> { value [<i>value</i>]; } mime-pattern <i>object-name</i> { value [<i>value</i>]; } protocol-command <i>object-name</i> { value [<i>value</i>]; } url-pattern <i>object-name</i> { value [<i>value</i>]; } } </pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Configure custom objects before configuring UTM feature-profile features. |



WARNING: Custom category does not take precedence over predefined categories when it has the same name as one of the predefined categories. We do not recommend having a custom category name be the same as the predefined category name.

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

custom-tag-string

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | custom-tag-string [<i>string</i>]; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Configure a custom string for identifying a message as spam. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

custom-url-category

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <code>custom-url-category <i>object-name</i> {
 value [<i>value</i>];
}</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm custom-objects] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Use URL pattern lists to create Custom URL category lists. These are lists of patterns that bypass scanning. |



WARNING: Custom category does not take precedence over predefined categories when it has the same name as one of the predefined categories. We do not recommend having a custom category name be the same as the predefined category name.

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>object-name</i>—Name of the URL category-list object. • <i>value value</i>—Value of the URL category-list object. You can configure multiple values separated by spaces and enclosed in square brackets. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understanding UTM Custom Objects on page 5 |

decompress-layer

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | decompress-layer (block log-and-permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Description | The Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, decompress layer error is the error returned by the scan engine when the scanned file has too many compression layers. The default action is block. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block—Log the error and deny the traffic• log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Full Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 72 |

decompress-layer-limit

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | decompress-layer-limit <i>value</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options] |
| Release Information | The Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | <p>The decompression layer limit specifies how many layers of nested compressed files and files with internal extractable objects, such as archive files (tar), the internal antivirus scanner can decompress before it executes the virus scan.</p> <p>Range: 1 through 4</p> |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Full Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 72 |

default (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | default (block log-and-permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | All errors other than those specifically listed fall into this category. This could include either unhandled system exceptions (internal errors) or other unknown errors. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • block—Log the error and deny the traffic • log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

default (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | default (block log-and-permit permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | All errors other than those specifically listed fall into this category. This could include either unhandled system exceptions (internal errors) or other unknown errors. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • block—Log the error and deny the traffic • log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic • permit—Permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

default (Security UTM)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | default (block log-and-permit permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 . |
| Description | Specify the default action to take for a URL. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block—Log the error and deny the traffic.• log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic.• permit—Permit the traffic. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

default (Security Web Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | default (block log-and-permit permit quarantine); |
| Hierarchy Level | <p>[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-settings]</p> <p>[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-settings]</p> <p>[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-local profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-settings]</p> <p>[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-settings]</p> |
| Release Information | <p>The Surf-Control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.</p> <p>Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering.</p> |
| Description | Specify an action for the profile, for requests that experience internal errors in the Web-filtering module. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • block—Log the error and deny the traffic. • log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic. • permit —Permit the traffic. • quarantine—Show the warning message and permit/block the traffic based on user input. |
| Required Privilege Level | <p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p> |
| Related Documentation | |

display-host (Security Fallback Block)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | display-host; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Display the computer host name in the notification e-mail sent to the administrator when a fallback-block notification occurs. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

display-host (Security Virus Detection)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | display-host; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus profile <i>profile name</i> notification-options virus-detection] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Display the computer host name in the notification e-mail sent to the administrator when a virus is detected by Sophos antivirus. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

download-profile (Security Antivirus FTP)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | download-profile <i>profile-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> anti-virus ftp] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the antivirus FTP (download) protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

download-profile (Security Content Filtering FTP)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | download-profile <i>profile-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> content-filtering ftp] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the content-filtering FTP (download) protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Content Filtering Overview on page 179 |

email-notify

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre>email-notify { admin-email <i>email-address</i>; custom-message <i>message</i>; custom-message-subject <i>message-subject</i>; }</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | You can configure the device to notify a specified administrator when patterns are updated. This is an e-mail notification with a custom message and a custom subject line. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

engine-not-ready

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | engine-not-ready (block log-and-permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | The scan engine is initializing itself, for example, loading the signature database. During this phase, it is not ready to scan a file. A file could either pass or be blocked according to this setting. The default action is block. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block—Log the error and deny the traffic• log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

engine-not-ready (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | default (block log-and-permit permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Release 11.1 . |
| Description | The scan engine is initializing itself, for example, loading the signature database. During this phase, it is not ready to scan a file. A file could either pass or be blocked according to this setting. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block—Log the error and deny the traffic• log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic• permit—Permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155 |

exception (Security Antivirus Mime Whitelist)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <code>exception <i>listname</i>;</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus mime-whitelist]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus mime-whitelist list <i>listname</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Configure the antivirus scanner to use an exception list to the MIME bypass list (custom objects). To use the exception list, you first create a whitelist custom-object list with the list statement. The system will first look at any existing whitelist mime pattern. If it matches an item, it will then continue to look for any exceptions to the whitelist and will then scan any item in the exception list. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

exception (Security Content Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>exception <i>list-name</i>;</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile <i>profile-name</i> block-mime] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure the content filter to use an exception list to the MIME block list (custom objects). |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Content Filtering Overview on page 179 |

fallback-block (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>fallback-block {
 administrator-email <i>email-address</i>;
 allow-email;
 custom-message <i>message</i>;
 custom-message-subject <i>message-subject</i>;
 display-host;
 (notify-mail-sender no-notify-mail-sender);
 type (message protocol-only);
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | <pre>[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>
 notification-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>
 notification-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>
 notification-options]</pre> |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Configure notifications for fallback blocking actions. Fallback options tell the system how to handle the errors returned by either the scan engine or the scan manager. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

fallback-non-block (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre> fallback-non-block { custom-message <i>message</i>; custom-message-subject <i>message-subject</i>; (notify-mail-recipient no-notify-mail-recipient); } </pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | <pre> [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options] [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options] [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options] </pre> |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Configure notifications for fallback nonblocking actions. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | <p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p> |
| Related Documentation | |

fallback-options (Security Antivirus Juniper Express Engine)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre>fallback-options {
 content-size (block log-and-permit);
 default (block log-and-permit);
 engine-not-ready (block log-and-permit);
 out-of-resources (block (log-and-permit);
 timeout (block log-and-permit);
 too-many-requests (block log-and-permit);
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Fallback options tell the system how to handle the errors. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Express Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 45 |

fallback-options (Security Antivirus Kaspersky Lab Engine)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre> fallback-options { content-size (block log-and-permit); corrupt-file (block log-and-permit); decompress-layer (block log-and-permit); default (block log-and-permit); engine-not-ready (block log-and-permit); out-of-resources (block (log-and-permit); password-file (block (log-and-permit); timeout (block log-and-permit); too-many-requests (block log-and-permit); }</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | The Kaspersky feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Fallback options tell the system how to handle the errors returned by either the scan engine or the scan manager. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Full Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 72 |

fallback-options (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>fallback-options {
 content-size (block log-and-permit permit);
 default (block log-and-permit permit);
 engine-not-ready (block log-and-permit permit);
 out-of-resources (block log-and-permit permit);
 timeout (block log-and-permit permit);
 too-many-requests (block log-and-permit permit);
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Configure fallback options to instruct the system how to handle errors. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155 |

fallback-settings (Security Web Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>fallback-settings {
 default (block log-and-permit);
 server-connectivity (block log-and-permit);
 timeout (block log-and-permit);
 too-many-requests (block log-and-permit);
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile <i>profile-name</i>]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | The Surf-Control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.
For previous releases, Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .
Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Fallback settings tell the system how to handle errors. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

fallback-settings (Security Web Filtering Juniper Local)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre> fallback-settings { default (block log-and-permit); server-connectivity (block log-and-permit); timeout (block log-and-permit); too-many-requests (block log-and-permit); }</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-local profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 10.0 . |
| Description | Fallback settings tell the system how to handle errors. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Web Filtering Overview on page 198 |

fallback-settings (Security Web Filtering Websense Redirect)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre> fallback-settings { default (block log-and-permit); server-connectivity (block log-and-permit); timeout (block log-and-permit); too-many-requests (block log-and-permit); }</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Fallback settings tell the system how to handle errors. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 240 |

feature-profile

```
Syntax  feature-profile {
        anti-spam {
            address-blacklist list-name;
            address-whitelist list-name;
            sbl {
                profile profile-name {
                    custom-tag-string [string];
                    (sbl-default-server | no-sbl-default-server);
                    spam-action (block | tag-header | tag-subject);
                }
            }
            traceoptions flag flag;
        }
        anti-virus {
            juniper-express-engine {
                pattern-update {
                    email-notify {
                        admin-email email-address;
                        custom-message message;
                        custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    }
                    interval value;
                    no-autoupdate;
                    proxy {
                        password password-string;
                        port port-number;
                        server address-or-url;
                        username name;
                    }
                }
                url url;
            }
            profile profile-name {
                fallback-options {
                    content-size (block | log-and-permit);
                    default (block | log-and-permit);
                    engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit);
                    out-of-resources (block | (log-and-permit);
                    timeout (block | log-and-permit);
                    too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
                }
                notification-options {
                    fallback-block {
                        administrator-email email-address;
                        allow-email;
                        custom-message message;
                        custom-message-subject message-subject;
                        display-host;
                        (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                        type (message | protocol-only);
                    }
                    fallback-non-block {
                        custom-message message;
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
```

```

        custom-message-subject message-subject;
        (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
    }
    virus-detection {
        custom-message message;
        custom-message-subject message-subject;
        (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
        type (message | protocol-only);
    }
}
scan-options {
    content-size-limit value;
    (intelligent-prescreening | no-intelligent-prescreening);
    timeout value;
}
trickling {
    timeout value;
}
}
}
kaspersky-lab-engine {
    pattern-update {
        email-notify {
            admin-email email-address;
            custom-message message;
            custom-message-subject message-subject;
        }
        interval value;
        no-autoupdate;
        proxy {
            password password-string;
            port port-number;
            server address-or-url;
            username name;
        }
        url url;
    }
}
profile profile-name {
    fallback-options {
        content-size (block | log-and-permit);
        corrupt-file (block | log-and-permit);
        decompress-layer (block | log-and-permit);
        default (block | log-and-permit);
        engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit);
        out-of-resources (block | (log-and-permit));
        password-file (block | (log-and-permit));
        timeout (block | log-and-permit);
        too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
    }
    notification-options {
        fallback-block {
            administrator-email email-address;
            allow-email;
            custom-message message;
            custom-message-subject message-subject;
            display-host;
        }
    }
}

```

```

        (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
        type (message | protocol-only);
    }
    fallback-non-block {
        custom-message message;
        custom-message-subject message-subject;
        (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
    }
    virus-detection {
        custom-message message;
        custom-message-subject message-subject;
        (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
        type (message | protocol-only);
    }
}
scan-options {
    content-size-limit value;
    decompress-layer-limit value;
    (intelligent-prescreening | no-intelligent-prescreening);
    scan-extension filename;
    scan-mode (all | by-extension);
    timeout value;
}
trickling {
    timeout value;
}
}
mime-whitelist {
    exception listname;
    list listname {
        exception listname;
    }
}
sophos-engine {
    pattern-update {
        email-notify {
            admin-email email-address;
            custom-message message;
            custom-message-subject message-subject;
        }
        interval value;
        no-autoupdate;
        proxy {
            password password-string;
            port port-number;
            server address-or-url;
            username name;
        }
        url url;
    }
}
profile <name> {
    fallback-options {
        content-size (block | log-and-permit | permit);
        default (block | log-and-permit | permit);
        engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    }
}

```

```

    out-of-resources (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    timeout (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit | permit);
}
notification-options {
    fallback-block {
        administrator-email email-address;
        allow-email;
        custom-message message;
        custom-message-subject message-subject;
        display-host;
        (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
        type (message | protocol-only);
    }
    fallback-non-block {
        custom-message message;
        custom-message-subject message-subject;
        (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
    }
    virus-detection {
        custom-message message;
        custom-message-subject message-subject;
        (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
        type (message | protocol-only);
    }
}
scan-options {
    content-size-limit value;
    (no-uri-check | uri-check);
    timeout value;
}
trickling {
    timeout value;
}
}
sxl-retry value;
sxl-timeout seconds;
}
traceoptions flag flag;
type (juniper-express-engine | kaspersky-lab-engine | sophos-engine);
url-whitelist listname;
}
content-filtering {
    profile profile-name {
        block-command protocol-command-list;
        block-content-type (activex | exe | http-cookie | java-applet | zip);
        block-extension extension-list;
        block-mime {
            exception list-name;
            list list-name;
        }
    }
    notification-options {
        custom-message message;
        (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
        type (message | protocol-only);
    }
}

```

```
        permit-command protocol-command-list;  
    }  
    traceoptions flag flag;  
}  
web-filtering {  
    url-whitelist custwhitelist;  
    url-blacklist custblacklist;  
    http-reassemble;  
    type juniper-enhanced;  
    juniper-enhanced {  
        cache {  
            timeout 1800;  
            size 500;  
        }  
        server {  
            host rp.cloud.threatseeker.com;  
            port 80;  
        }  
    }  
    profile junos-wf-enhanced-default {  
        category {  
            Enhanced_Hacking {  
                action log-and-permit;  
            }  
            Enhanced_Government {  
                action quarantine;  
            }  
        }  
        site-reputation-action {  
            very-safe permit;  
            moderately-safe log-and-permit;  
            fairly-safe log-and-permit;  
            harmful block;  
            suspicious block;  
        }  
        default block;  
        custom-block-message "****access denied ****";  
        fallback-settings {  
            default block;  
            server-connectivity block;  
            timeout block;  
            too-many-requests block;  
        }  
        timeout 10;  
        no-safe-search;  
    }  
    utm-policy mypolicy {  
        web-filtering {  
            http-profile my_ewfprofile01;  
        }  
    }  
}  
web-filtering {  
    juniper-enhanced {  
        cache {  
            size value;  
            timeout value;
```

```

}
profile profile-name {
  category customurl-list name {
    action (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
  }
  custom-block-message value;
  custom-quarantine-message value;
  default (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
  fallback-settings {
    default (block | log-and-permit);
    server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
    timeout (block | log-and-permit);
    too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
  }
  no-safe-search;
  site-reputation-action {
    fairly-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
    harmful (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
    moderately-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
    suspicious (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
    very-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
  }
  timeout value;
}
server {
  host host-name;
  port number;
}
}
juniper-local {
  profile profile-name {
    custom-block-message value;
    default (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    fallback-settings {
      default (block | log-and-permit);
      server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
      timeout (block | log-and-permit);
      too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
    }
    timeout value;
  }
}
surf-control-integrated {
  cache {
    size value;
    timeout value;
  }
  profile profile-name {
    category customurl-list name {
      action (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    }
    custom-block-message value;
    default (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    fallback-settings {
      default (block | log-and-permit);
      server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);

```

```

        timeout (block | log-and-permit);
        too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
    }
    timeout value;
}
server {
    host host-name;
    port number;
}
}
traceoptions flag flag;
type (juniper-enhanced | juniper-local | surf-control-integrated | websense-redirect);
url-blacklist listname;
url-whitelist listname;
websense-redirect {
    profile profile-name {
        account value;
        custom-block-message value;
        fallback-settings {
            default (block | log-and-permit);
            server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
            timeout (block | log-and-permit);
            too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
        }
        server {
            host host-name;
            port number;
        }
        sockets value;
        timeout value;
    }
}
}
}

```

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm]

Release Information The Kaspersky, Express antivirus and Surf-Control features are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Release 9.5.

Description Configure UTM features, antivirus, antispam, content-filtering, and web-filtering by creating feature profiles.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

filename-extension

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | filename-extension <i>object-name</i> {
value [<i>value</i>];
} |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm custom-objects] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | When scanning content, you can use a file extension list to define a set of file extensions that are used in file extension scan mode (scan-by-extension). |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>object-name</i>—Name of the extension-list object.• <i>value value</i>—Value of the extension-list object. You can configure multiple values separated by spaces and enclosed in square brackets. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

flag (SMTP)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre>flag {
 all;
 configuration;
 IPC;
 protocol-exchange;
 send-request;
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit smtp traceoptions] |
| Release Information | Statement added in Junos OS Release 10.0. |
| Description | Set flag for the SMTP traceoptions. |
| Options | <p>The following flag options are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• IPC—Trace interprocess communication.• all—Trace everything.• configuration—Trace configuration event.• protocol-exchange—Trace SMTP protocol exchanges.• send-request—Trace send mail request event. |
| Required Privilege Level | <p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p> |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• smtp-profile (Security UTM Policy Antispam) on page 375 |

format (Security Log Stream)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | format (binary sd-syslog syslog welf) |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security log stream <i>stream-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 10.0 . Updated in Junos OS Release 12.1 . |
| Description | Set the format for remote security message logging to binary , syslog (system log), sd-syslog (structured system log), or welf . Note that for the WELF format, the category must be set to content-security (see category (Security Logging)). |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • binary—Binary encoded text to conserve resources. • sd-syslog—Structured system log file. • syslog—Traditional system log file. • welf—Web Trends Extended Log Format. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>AppSecure Services Feature Guide for Security Devices</i> • <i>Logical Systems Feature Guide for Security Devices</i> |

from-zone (Security Policies)

```
Syntax  from-zone zone-name to-zone zone-name {  
        policy policy-name {  
            description description;  
            match {  
                application {  
                    [application];  
                    any;  
                }  
                destination-address {  
                    [address];  
                    any;  
                    any-ipv4;  
                    any-ipv6;  
                }  
                source-address {  
                    [address];  
                    any;  
                    any-ipv4;  
                    any-ipv6;  
                }  
                source-identity {  
                    [role-name];  
                    any;  
                    authenticated-user;  
                    unauthenticated-user;  
                    unknown-user;  
                }  
                source-end-user-profile {  
                    profile-name;  
                }  
            }  
            scheduler-name scheduler-name;  
            then {  
                count {  
                    alarm {  
                        per-minute-threshold number;  
                        per-second-threshold number;  
                    }  
                }  
                deny;  
                log {  
                    session-close;  
                    session-init;  
                }  
                permit {  
                    application-services {  
                        application-firewall {  
                            rule-set rule-set-name;  
                        }  
                    }  
                    application-traffic-control {  
                        rule-set rule-set-name;  
                    }  
                }  
            }  
        }  
    }
```

```

gprs-gtp-profile profile-name;
gprs-sctp-profile profile-name;
idp;
redirect-wx | reverse-redirect-wx;
ssl-proxy {
    profile-name profile-name;
}
uac-policy {
    captive-portal captive-portal;
}
utm-policy policy-name;
}
destination-address {
    drop-translated;
    drop-untranslated;
}
firewall-authentication {
    pass-through {
        access-profile profile-name;
        client-match user-or-group-name;
        ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
        web-redirect;
        web-redirect-to-https;
    }
    user-firewall {
        access-profile profile-name;
        domain domain-name;
        ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
    }
    web-authentication {
        client-match user-or-group-name;
    }
}
services-offload;
tcp-options {
    initial-tcp-mss mss-value;
    reverse-tcp-mss mss-value;
    sequence-check-required;
    sequence-check-required;
    syn-check-required;
}
tunnel {
    ipsec-group-vpn group-vpn;
    ipsec-vpn vpn-name;
    pair-policy pair-policy;
}
}
reject;
}
}

```

Hierarchy Level [edit security policies]

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. Support for the services-offload option added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for the source-identity option added in Junos OS Release 12.1. Support for the description option added in Junos OS Release 12.1. Support for the ssl-termination-profile and web-redirect-to-https options added in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10. Support for the user-firewall option added in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10. Support for the initial-tcp-mss and reverse-tcp-mss options added in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D20. |
| Description | Specify a source zone and destination zone to be associated with the security policy. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• from-zone <i>zone-name</i>—Name of the source zone.• to-zone <i>zone-name</i>—Name of the destination zone. <p>The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer.</p> |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Security Policies Overview</i>• <i>Understanding Security Policy Rules</i>• <i>Understanding Security Policy Elements</i> |

ftp (UTM Policy Anti-Virus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>ftp {
 download-profile <i>profile-name</i>;
 upload-profile <i>profile-name</i>;
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> anti-virus] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the antivirus FTP protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Security Policies Overview</i>• <i>Understanding Security Policy Rules</i>• <i>Understanding Security Policy Elements</i> |

ftp (UTM Policy Content Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | ftp {
download-profile <i>profile-name</i> ;
upload-profile <i>profile-name</i> ;
} |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> content-filtering] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the content-filtering FTP protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Security Policies Overview</i> • <i>Understanding Security Policy Rules</i> • <i>Understanding Security Policy Elements</i> |

host (Security Web Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | host <i>host-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated server]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile <i>profile-name</i> server]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i> server] |
| Release Information | The Surf-Control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Set server host parameters by entering the server name or IP address. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

http-profile (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | http-profile <i>profile-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> anti-virus] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the antivirus HTTP protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

http-profile (Security Content Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | http-profile <i>profile-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> content-filtering] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the content-filtering HTTP protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Content Filtering Overview on page 179 |

http-profile (Security Web Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | http-profile <i>profile-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> web-filtering] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the Web-filtering HTTP protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Web Filtering Overview on page 198 |

imap-profile (Security UTM Policy Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | imap-profile <i>profile-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> anti-virus] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the antivirus IMAP protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |


imap-profile (Security UTM Policy Content Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | imap-profile <i>profile-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> content-filtering] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the content-filtering IMAP protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Content Filtering Overview on page 179 |

intelligent-prescreening

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | intelligent-prescreening; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1x49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | <p>Enable intelligent prescreening.</p> <p>Intelligent prescreening tells the antivirus module to begin scanning a file much earlier. In this case, the scan engine uses the first packet or the first several packets to determine if a file could possibly contain malicious code. The scan engine does a quick check on these first packets and if the scan engine finds that it is unlikely that the file is infected, it then determines that it is safe to bypass the normal scanning procedure.</p> <p>You can disable intelligent prescreening with the no-intelligent-prescreening statement.</p> |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

interval (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---|--|
| Syntax | <code>interval value;</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | <code>[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update]</code>
<code>[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update]</code>
<code>[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update]</code> |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 for Juniper Express engine and Kaspersky Lab engine. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Set the pattern data files auto-update interval. You can choose to leave the default interval value or you can change it by using this command. You can also force a manual update, if necessary. |
| <div>  <p>NOTE: The data files used with Sophos are not typical virus pattern files; they are small files that help guide virus scanning logic. The full virus pattern database is stored on an external Sophos server called the Sophos Extensible List (SXL) server.</p> </div> | |
| Options | <p>value—Pattern data files auto-update interval in minutes.</p> <p>Range: 10 through 10,080 minutes (10 minutes through 7 days)</p> <p>Default: For Juniper Express engine and Kaspersky Lab engine, 60 minutes; for Sophos engine, 1440 minutes (every 24 hours)</p> |
| Required Privilege Level | <p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p> |
| Related Documentation | |

ipc

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre>ipc {
 traceoptions flag <i>flag</i>;
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Configure trace options for IPC. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• flag—Trace operation to perform. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple flag statements.• all—Enable trace for all IPC trace options.• basic—Trace basic IPC related information.• connection-manager—Trace IPC connection manager information.• connection-status—Trace IPC connection status information.• detail—Trace IPC related detailed information.• pfe—Trace communication with PFE.• utm-realtime—Trace IPC realtime-thread information. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

juniper-enhanced

```
Syntax  juniper-enhanced {
        cache {
            size value;
            timeout value;
        }
        profile profile-name {
            category customurl-list name {
                action (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
            }
            custom-block-message value;
            custom-quarantine-message value;
            default (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
            fallback-settings {
                default (block | log-and-permit);
                server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
                timeout (block | log-and-permit);
                too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
            }
            no-safe-search;
            site-reputation-action {
                fairly-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
                harmful (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
                moderately-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
                suspicious (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
                very-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
            }
            timeout value;
        }
        server {
            host host-name;
            port number;
        }
    }
```

Hierarchy Level [set security utm feature-profile web-filtering]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 .

Description Configure the UTM Enhanced Web Filtering feature.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Web Filtering Overview on page 198](#)

juniper-express-engine

```
Syntax  juniper-express-engine {
        pattern-update {
            email-notify {
                admin-email email-address;
                custom-message message;
                custom-message-subject message-subject;
            }
            interval value;
            no-autoupdate;
            proxy {
                password password-string;
                port port-number;
                server address-or-url;
                username name;
            }
            url url;
        }
        profile profile-name {
            fallback-options {
                content-size (block | log-and-permit);
                default (block | log-and-permit);
                engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit);
                out-of-resources (block | log-and-permit);
                timeout (block | log-and-permit);
                too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
            }
            notification-options {
                fallback-block {
                    administrator-email email-address;
                    allow-email;
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    display-host;
                    (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                    type (message | protocol-only);
                }
                fallback-non-block {
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
                }
                virus-detection {
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                    type (message | protocol-only);
                }
            }
            scan-options {
                content-size-limit value;
                (intelligent-prescreening | no-intelligent-prescreening);
                timeout value;
            }
        }
    }
```

```

    }
    trickling {
        timeout value;
    }
}

```

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus] |
| Release Information | The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Configure the UTM express antivirus feature. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Express Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 45 |

juniper-local

```

Syntax  juniper-local {
        profile profile-name {
            custom-block-message value;
            default (block | log-and-permit | permit);
            fallback-settings {
                default (block | log-and-permit);
                server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
                timeout (block | log-and-permit);
                too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
            }
            timeout value;
        }
    }

```

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Hierarchy Level | [set security utm feature-profile web-filtering] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 10.0 . |
| Description | Configure the UTM Web-filtering local feature. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

kaspersky-lab-engine

```
Syntax  kaspersky-lab-engine {
        pattern-update {
            email-notify {
                admin-email email-address;
                custom-message message;
                custom-message-subject message-subject;
            }
            interval value;
            no-autoupdate;
            proxy {
                password password-string;
                port port-number;
                server address-or-url;
                username name;
            }
            url url;
        }
        profile profile-name {
            fallback-options {
                content-size (block | log-and-permit);
                corrupt-file (block | log-and-permit);
                decompress-layer (block | log-and-permit);
                default (block | log-and-permit);
                engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit);
                out-of-resources (block | (log-and-permit);
                password-file (block | (log-and-permit);
                timeout (block | log-and-permit);
                too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
            }
            notification-options {
                fallback-block {
                    administrator-email email-address;
                    allow-email;
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    display-host;
                    (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                    type (message | protocol-only);
                }
                fallback-non-block {
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
                }
                virus-detection {
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                    type (message | protocol-only);
                }
            }
            scan-options {
```



```

        content-size-limit value;
        decompress-layer-limit value;
        (intelligent-prescreening | no-intelligent-prescreening);
        scan-extension filename;
        scan-mode (all | by-extension);
        timeout value;
    }
    trickling {
        timeout value;
    }
}

```

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]

Release Information The Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1x49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.

Description Configure the UTM full file-based antivirus feature.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

limit (UTM Policy)

Syntax limit *value*;

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm utm-policy *policy-name* traffic-options sessions-per-client]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .

Description In an attempt to consume all available resources and hinder the ability of the device, a malicious user might generate a large amount of traffic all at once. To prevent such activity from succeeding, you can impose a session throttle to limit sessions.

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

list (Security Antivirus Mime Whitelist)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <code>list <i>listname</i> {
 exception <i>listname</i>;
}</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus mime-whitelist] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure the antivirus scanner to use MIME bypass lists (custom objects). If you want to have exceptions to the whitelist, create a mime-pattern list with the exception statement in addition to the list statement. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

list (Security Content Filtering Block Mime)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>list <i>list-name</i>;</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile <i>profile-name</i> block-mime] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure the content filter to use MIME block lists (custom objects). |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Content Filtering Overview on page 179 |

log (Security)

```

Syntax  log {
        cache {
            exclude exclude-name {
                destination-address destination-address;
                destination-port destination-port;
                event-id event-id;
                failure;
                interface-name interface-name;
                policy-name policy-name;
                process process-name;
                protocol protocol;
                source-address source-address;
                source-port source-port;
                success;
                user-name user-name;
            }
            limit value;
        }
        disable;
        event-rate rate;
        facility-override;
        file {
            files max-file-number;
            name file-name;
            path binary-log-file-path;
            size maximum-file-size;
        }
        format (binary | sd-syslog | syslog);
        max-database-record
        mode (event | stream);
        rate-cap <rate-cap-value;rate-limit> (0.5000 logs per second);
        (source-address source-address | source-interface interface-name);
        stream stream-name {
            category (all | content-security | fw-auth | screen | alg | nat | flow | sctp | gtp | ipsec | idp
                | rtlog |pst-ds-lite | appqos |secintel);
            file {
                name file-name;
                size file-size;
                rotation max-rotation-number;
            }
            filter
            threat-attack
            format (binary | sd-syslog | syslog | welf);
            host {
                ip-address;
                port port-number;
            }
            rate-limit (1..65535 logs per second)
            severity (alert | critical | debug | emergency | error | info | notice | warning);
        }
        traceoptions {
            file {

```

```
    filename;  
    files number;  
    match regular-expression;  
    size maximum-file-size (10240..1073741824);  
    world-readable  
    no-world-readable  
  }  
  flag (all | configuration | hpl | report | source);  
  no-remote-trace (file | flag);  
}  
transport {  
  protocol (udp | tcp | tls);  
  tls-profile tls-profile-name;  
  tcp-connections tcp-connections;  
}  
utc-timestamp;  
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.2.

Description You can set the mode of logging (event for traditional system logging or stream for streaming security logs through a revenue port to a server). You can also specify all the other parameters for security logging.

- Options**
- **disable**—Disable the security logging for the device.
 - **event-rate** *rate*—Limits the rate (0 through 1500) at which logs will be streamed per second.
 - **rate-cap** *rate-cap-value*—Works with event mode only. Limits the rate (0 through 5000) at which data plane logs will be generated per second.
 - **stream**—Every stream can configure file or host.
 - **file-name**—Specify the file name.
 - **file-size**—Specify the file size.
 - SRX1500 - The default value is 25M and the range is 10M through 50M.
 - SRX4100 and SRX4200 - The default value is 25M and the range is 10M through 50M.
 - vSRX - The default value is 2M and the range is 1M through 3M.
 - **rotation**—Configure the max file number for rotation. The default value is 10 and the range is 2 through 19.
 - **max-database-record**—The following are the disk usage range limit for database:
 - SRX1500: 0 through 15,000,000
 - SRX4100 and SRX4200: 0 through 15,000,000
 - vSRX: 0 through 10,000,000



NOTE: Be sure there is enough free space in `/var/log/hostlogs/`, otherwise logs may be dropped when written into database.

- **source-address** *source-address*—Specify a source IP address or IP address used when exporting security logs, which is mandatory to configure **stream host**.
- **source-interface** *interface-name*—Specify a source interface name, which is mandatory to configure **stream host**.



NOTE: The **source-address** and **source-interface** are alternate values. Using one of the options is mandatory.

- **utc-time-stamp**—Specify to use UTC time for security log timestamps.

The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| Required Privilege | security—To view this statement in the configuration. |
| Level | security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

mime-pattern

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>mime-pattern <i>object-name</i> {
 value [<i>value</i>];
}</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm custom-objects] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | The gateway device uses MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extension) types to decide which traffic is allowed to bypass various types of scanning. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>object-name</i>—Name of the MIME object.• <i>value value</i>—Value of the MIME object. You can configure multiple values separated by spaces and enclosed in square brackets. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

mime-whitelist

Syntax

```
mime-whitelist {
    exception listname;
    list listname {
        exception listname;
    }
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Statement updated for Sophos antivirus support in Junos OS Release 11.1.

Description Configure the antivirus scanner to use MIME bypass lists and exception lists. You can use your own custom object lists, or you can use the default list that ships with the device called junos-default-bypass-mime.




WARNING: When you configure the MIME whitelist feature, be aware that, because header information in HTTP traffic can be spoofed, you cannot always trust HTTP headers to be legitimate. When a Web browser is determining the appropriate action for a given file type, it detects the file type without checking the MIME header contents. However, the MIME whitelist feature does refer to the MIME encoding in the HTTP header. For these reasons, it is possible in certain cases for a malicious website to provide an invalid HTTP header. For example, a network administrator might inadvertently add a malicious website to a MIME whitelist, and, because the site is in the whitelist, it will not be blocked by Sophos even though Sophos has identified the site as malicious in its database. Internal hosts would then be able to reach this site and could become infected.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

no-autoupdate

| | |
|--|--|
| Syntax | no-autoupdate; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 for Juniper Express engine and Kaspersky Lab engine. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Turn off automatic data file (pattern file) update for the Kaspersky Lab, Juniper Express, or Sophos engines. |
| <div> NOTE: The data files used with Sophos are not typical virus pattern files; they are small files that help guide virus scanning logic. The full virus pattern database is stored on an external Sophos server called the Sophos Extensible List (SXL) server.</div> | |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

no-intelligent-prescreening

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | no-intelligent-prescreening; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | <p>Disables intelligent prescreening.</p> <p>Intelligent prescreening tells the antivirus module to begin scanning a file much earlier. In this case, the scan engine uses the first packet or the first several packets to determine if a file could possibly contain malicious code. The scan engine does a quick check on these first packets and if the scan engine finds that it is unlikely that the file is infected, it then determines that it is safe to bypass the normal scanning procedure.</p> <p>You can enable intelligent prescreening with the intelligent-prescreening statement.</p> |
| Required Privilege Level | <p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p> |
| Related Documentation | |

no-notify-mail-recipient

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | no-notify-mail-recipient; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-non-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-non-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-non-block] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | <p>Do not notify the e-mail recipient about errors returned by the antivirus scan engine when a fallback nonblocking action occurs.</p> <p>You can specify that the e-mail recipient is to be notified with the notify-mail-recipient statement.</p> |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

no-notify-mail-sender (Security Content Filtering Notification Options)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | no-notify-mail-sender; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Do not notify the e-mail sender. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Content Filtering Overview on page 179 |

no-notify-mail-sender (Security Fallback Block)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | no-notify-mail-sender; |
| Hierarchy Level | <p>[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]</p> <p>[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]</p> <p>[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]</p> |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | <p>Do not notify the e-mail sender about errors returned by the antivirus scan engine when a fallback action occurs.</p> <p>You can specify that the e-mail sender is to be notified with the notify-mail-sender statement.</p> |
| Required Privilege Level | <p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p> |
| Related Documentation | |

no-notify-mail-sender (Security Virus Detection)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | no-notify-mail-sender; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Do not notify the e-mail sender when a virus is detected by the antivirus engine.

You can specify that the e-mail sender is to be notified with the notify-mail-sender statement. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

no-sbl-default-server

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | no-sbl-default-server; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Disable the default SBL server lookup. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Antispam Filtering Overview on page 21 |

notification-options (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre> notification-options { fallback-block { administrator-email <i>email-address</i>; allow-email; custom-message <i>message</i>; custom-message-subject <i>message-subject</i>; display-host; (notify-mail-sender no-notify-mail-sender); type (message protocol-only); } fallback-non-block { custom-message <i>message</i>; custom-message-subject <i>message-subject</i>; (notify-mail-recipient no-notify-mail-recipient); } virus-detection { custom-message <i>message</i>; custom-message-subject <i>message-subject</i>; (notify-mail-sender no-notify-mail-sender); type (message protocol-only); } }</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | <pre> [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>] [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>] [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>]</pre> |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | There are multiple notification options you can configure to trigger when a virus is detected. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | <p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p> |
| Related Documentation | |

notification-options (Security Content Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>notification-options {
 custom-message <i>message</i>;
 (notify-mail-sender no-notify-mail-sender);
 type (message protocol-only);
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | You can configure a message notification to trigger when a content filter is matched. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Content Filtering Overview on page 179 |

notify-mail-recipient

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre>notify-mail-recipient;</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>
notification-options fallback-non-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>
notification-options fallback-non-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>
notification-options fallback-non-block] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Notify the e-mail recipient about errors returned by the antivirus scan engine when a fallback nonblocking action occurs.

You can specify that the e-mail recipient is not to be notified with the no-notify-mail-recipient statement. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

notify-mail-sender (Security Content Filtering Notification Options)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | notify-mail-sender; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Notify the e-mail sender. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Content Filtering Overview on page 179 |

notify-mail-sender (Security Fallback Block)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | notify-mail-sender; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | <p>E-mail notification is used to notify the sender or the recipient about the errors returned by either the scan engine or the scan manager when a fallback action occurs.</p> <p>You can specify that the sender is not to be notified with the no-notify-mail-sender statement.</p> |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

notify-mail-sender (Security Virus Detection)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | notify-mail-sender; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | <p>E-mail notification is used to notify the sender or the recipient about the detected viruses or the scanning errors. When a virus is detected, an e-mail is sent to the sender upon virus detection.</p> <p>You can specify that the sender is not to be notified with the no-notify-mail-sender statement.</p> |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

no-uri-check

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | no-uri-check; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | <p>Do not perform Sophos antivirus Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) checking. URI checking is performed by analyzing HTTP traffic URI content against a remote Sophos database server to identify malware or malicious content. URI checking is on by default.</p> <p>You can enable Sophos antivirus URI checking with the uri-check statement.</p> |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

out-of-resources

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | out-of-resources (block (log-and-permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Virus scanning requires a great deal of memory and CPU resources. Due to resource constraints, memory allocation requests can be denied by the system. When out-of-resources occurs, scanning is aborted. The default action is block. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • block—Log the error and deny the traffic • log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

out-of-resources (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | default (block log-and-permit permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Virus scanning requires a great deal of memory and CPU resources. Due to resource constraints, memory allocation requests can be denied by the system. When out-of-resources occurs, scanning is aborted. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • block—Log the error and deny the traffic • log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic • permit—Permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | • Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155 |

over-limit

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | over-limit (block log-and-permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> traffic-options sessions-per-client] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | In an attempt to consume all available resources and hinder the ability of the device, a malicious user might generate a large amount of traffic all at once. To prevent such activity from succeeding, you can impose a session throttle to limit sessions and configure an action to occur when the limit is exceeded. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block—Log the error and deny the traffic• log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• utm on page 401 |

packet-filter

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>packet-filter <i>packet-filter-name</i> { action-profile (<i>profile-name</i> default); destination-port (<i>port-range</i> <i>protocol-name</i>); destination-prefix <i>destination-prefix</i>; interface <i>logical-interface-name</i>; protocol (<i>protocol-number</i> <i>protocol-name</i>; source-port (<i>port-range</i> <i>protocol-name</i>); source-prefix <i>source-prefix</i>; }</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security datapath-debug] |
| Release Information | <p>Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.6 ; Support for IPv6 addresses for the destination-prefix and source-prefix options added in Junos OS Release 10.4.</p> <p>Support for IPv6 filter for the interface option added in Junos OS Release 10.4.</p> |
| Description | Set packet filter for taking the datapath-debug action. A maximum of four filters are supported at the same time. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • action-profile (<i>profile-name</i> default)—Identify the action profile to use. You can specify the name of the action profile to use or select default action profile. • destination-port (<i>port-range</i> <i>protocol name</i>)—Specify a destination port to match TCP/UDP destination port. • destination-prefix <i>destination-prefix</i>—Specify a destination IPv4/IPv6 address prefix. • interface <i>logical-interface-name</i>—Specify a logical interface name. • protocol (<i>protocol-number</i> <i>protocol-name</i>)—Match IP protocol type. • source-port (<i>port-range</i> <i>protocol-name</i>)—Match TCP/UDP source port. • source-prefix <i>source-prefix</i>—Specify a source IP address prefix. |
| Required Privilege Level | <p>security—To view this statement in the configuration</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p> |

password (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>password password-string;</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update proxy]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update proxy]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update proxy] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Release 11.2. |
| Description | Set the password for the proxy server. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• utm on page 401 |

password-file

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <code>password-file (block (log-and-permit);</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Description | Password protected file is the error returned by the scan engine when the scanned file is protected by a password. The default action is log-and-permit. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block—Log the error and deny the traffic• log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Full Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 72 |

pattern-update (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre> pattern-update { email-notify { admin-email <i>email-address</i>; custom-message <i>message</i>; custom-message-subject <i>message-subject</i>; } interval <i>value</i>; no-autoupdate; proxy { password <i>password-string</i>; port <i>port-number</i>; server <i>address-or-url</i>; username <i>name</i>; } url <i>url</i>; } </pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 for Juniper Express engine and Kaspersky Lab engine. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Updates to the pattern file are added as new viruses are discovered. You can configure the security device to regularly update the pattern file automatically, or you can update the file manually. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

permit-command

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre> permit-command <i>protocol-command-list</i>; </pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Apply protocol permit command custom-objects to the content-filtering profile. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Content Filtering Overview on page 179 |

policies

```
Syntax  policies {
        default-policy (deny-all | permit-all);
        from-zone zone-name to-zone zone-name {
            policy policy-name {
                description description;
                match {
                    application {
                        [application];
                        any;
                    }
                    destination-address {
                        [address];
                        any;
                        any-ipv4;
                        any-ipv6;
                    }
                    source-address {
                        [address];
                        any;
                        any-ipv4;
                        any-ipv6;
                    }
                    source-identity {
                        [role-name];
                        any;
                        authenticated-user;
                        unauthenticated-user;
                        unknown-user;
                    }
                }
            }
            scheduler-name scheduler-name;
            then {
                count {
                    alarm {
                        per-minute-threshold number;
                        per-second-threshold number;
                    }
                }
                deny;
                log {
                    session-close;
                    session-init;
                }
                permit {
                    application-services {
                        application-firewall {
                            rule-set rule-set-name;
                        }
                    }
                    application-traffic-control {
                        rule-set rule-set-name;
                    }
                    gprs-gtp-profile profile-name;
                }
            }
        }
    }
```

```

    gprs-sctp-profile profile-name;
    idp;
    redirect-wx | reverse-redirect-wx;
    ssl-proxy {
        profile-name profile-name;
    }
    uac-policy {
        captive-portal captive-portal;
    }
    utm-policy policy-name;
}
destination-address {
    drop-translated;
    drop-untranslated;
}
firewall-authentication {
    pass-through {
        access-profile profile-name;
        client-match user-or-group-name;
        ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
        web-redirect;
        web-redirect-to-https;
    }
    user-firewall {
        access-profile profile-name;
        domain domain-name;
        ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
    }
    web-authentication {
        client-match user-or-group-name;
    }
}
services-offload;
tcp-options {
    sequence-check-required;
    syn-check-required;
}
tunnel {
    ipsec-group-vpn group-vpn;
    ipsec-vpn vpn-name;
    pair-policy pair-policy;
}
}
reject;
}
}
global {
    policy policy-name {
        description description;
        match {
            application {
                [application];
                any;
            }
            destination-address {

```

```
[address];
any;
any-ipv4;
any-ipv6;
}
from-zone {
  [zone-name];
  any;
}
source-address {
  [address];
  any;
  any-ipv4;
  any-ipv6;
}
source-identity {
  [role-name];
  any;
  authenticated-user;
  unauthenticated-user;
  unknown-user;
}
to-zone {
  [zone-name];
  any;
}
}
scheduler-name scheduler-name;
then {
  count {
    alarm {
      per-minute-threshold number;
      per-second-threshold number;
    }
  }
  deny;
  log {
    session-close;
    session-init;
  }
  permit {
    application-services {
      application-firewall {
        rule-set rule-set-name;
      }
      application-traffic-control {
        rule-set rule-set-name;
      }
      gprs-gtp-profile profile-name;
      gprs-sctp-profile profile-name;
      idp;
      redirect-wx | reverse-redirect-wx;
      ssl-proxy {
        profile-name profile-name;
      }
      uac-policy {
```



```

        captive-portal captive-portal;
    }
    utm-policy policy-name;
}
destination-address {
    drop-translated;
    drop-untranslated;
}
firewall-authentication {
    pass-through {
        access-profile profile-name;
        client-match user-or-group-name;
        ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
        web-redirect;
        web-redirect-to-https;
    }
    web-authentication {
        client-match user-or-group-name;
    }
}
services-offload;
tcp-options {
    initial-tcp-mss mss-value;
    reverse-tcp-mss mss-value;
    sequence-check-required;
    syn-check-required;
}
}
reject;
}
}
}
policy-rematch;
policy-stats {
    system-wide (disable | enable) ;
}
traceoptions {
    file {
        filename;
        files number;
        match regular-expression;
        size maximum-file-size;
        (world-readable | no-world-readable);
    }
    flag flag;
    no-remote-trace;
}
}

```

Hierarchy Level [edit security]

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Support for the services-offload option added in Junos OS Release 11.4.
Support for the source-identity option added in Junos OS Release 12.1.
Support for the description option added in Junos OS Release 12.1.
Support for the ssl-termination-profile and web-redirect-to-https options added on high-end SRX Series Services Gateways starting from Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10 and on vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40.
Support for the user-firewall option added in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10.
Support for the domain option, and for the from-zone and to-zone global policy match options, added in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.
Support for the initial-tcp-mss and reverse-tcp-mss options added in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D20. Support for the extensive option for policy-rematch added in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D20. |
| Description | Configure network security policies. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Security Policies Overview</i> |

pop3-profile (Security UTM Policy Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | pop3-profile <i>profile-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> anti-virus] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the antivirus POP3 protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

pop3-profile (Security UTM Policy Content Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | pop3-profile <i>profile-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> content-filtering] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the content filtering POP3 protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

port (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>port <i>port-number</i>;</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update proxy]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update proxy]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update proxy] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.2 . |
| Description | Set the port number for the proxy server. |
| Options | Range: 0 through 65,535 |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

port (Security Web Filtering Server)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>port <i>number</i>;</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated server]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile <i>profile-name</i> server]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i> server] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .
Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Enter the port number for communicating with the server. (Default ports are 80, 8080, and 8081.) |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

primary-server

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>primary-server {
 address <i>ipv4-address</i>;
 login <i>sender-email-address</i> {
 password <i>password</i>;
 }
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit smtp] |
| Release Information | Statement added in Junos OS Release 10.0. |
| Description | Configure Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) primary server for access authorization for SMTP requests. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | system—To view this statement in the configuration.
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

profile (Security Antispam SBL)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre>profile <i>profile-name</i> {
 custom-tag-string [<i>string</i>];
 (sbl-default-server no-sbl-default-server);
 spam-action (block tag-header tag-subject);
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Create a profile for the antispam sbl feature. This profile includes all subsequent configuration options. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

profile (Security Antivirus Juniper Express Engine)

```
Syntax  profile profile-name {
        fallback-options {
            content-size (block | log-and-permit);
            default (block | log-and-permit);
            engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit);
            out-of-resources (block | log-and-permit);
            timeout (block | log-and-permit);
            too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
        }
        notification-options {
            fallback-block {
                administrator-email email-address;
                allow-email;
                custom-message message;
                custom-message-subject message-subject;
                display-host;
                (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                type (message | protocol-only);
            }
            fallback-non-block {
                custom-message message;
                custom-message-subject message-subject;
                (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
            }
            virus-detection {
                custom-message message;
                custom-message-subject message-subject;
                (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                type (message | protocol-only);
            }
        }
        scan-options {
            content-size-limit value;
            (intelligent-prescreening | no-intelligent-prescreening);
            timeout value;
        }
        trickling {
            timeout value;
        }
    }
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine]

Release Information The express engine feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.

Description Create a profile for the Juniper express engine. This profile includes all subsequent configuration options.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Express Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 45 |

profile (Security Antivirus Kaspersky Lab Engine)

```

Syntax  profile profile-name {
        fallback-options {
            content-size (block | log-and-permit);
            corrupt-file (block | log-and-permit);
            decompress-layer (block | log-and-permit);
            default (block | log-and-permit);
            engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit);
            out-of-resources (block | (log-and-permit));
            password-file (block | (log-and-permit));
            timeout (block | log-and-permit);
            too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
        }
        notification-options {
            fallback-block {
                administrator-email email-address;
                allow-email;
                custom-message message;
                custom-message-subject message-subject;
                display-host;
                (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                type (message | protocol-only);
            }
            fallback-non-block {
                custom-message message;
                custom-message-subject message-subject;
                (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
            }
            virus-detection {
                custom-message message;
                custom-message-subject message-subject;
                (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                type (message | protocol-only);
            }
        }
        scan-options {
            content-size-limit value;
            decompress-layer-limit value;
            (intelligent-prescreening | no-intelligent-prescreening);
            scan-extension filename;
            scan-mode (all | by-extension);
            timeout value;
        }
        trickling {
            timeout value;
        }
    }

```

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine]

Release Information The Kaspersky feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Description | Create a profile for the Kaspersky Lab engine. This profile includes all subsequent configuration options. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• kaspersky-lab-engine on page 328• profile (Security Antivirus Juniper Express Engine) on page 357 |

profile (Security Content Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>profile <i>profile-name</i> {
 block-command <i>protocol-command-list</i>;
 block-content-type (activex exe http-cookie java-applet zip);
 block-extension <i>extension-list</i>;
 block-mime {
 exception <i>list-name</i>;
 list <i>list-name</i>;
 }
 notification-options {
 custom-message <i>message</i>;
 (notify-mail-sender no-notify-mail-sender);
 type (message protocol-only);
 }
 permit-command <i>protocol-command-list</i>;
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Create a profile for the content-filtering feature. This profile includes all subsequent configuration options. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Content Filtering Overview on page 179 |

profile (Security Sophos Engine Antivirus)

```

Syntax  profile <name> {
            fallback-options {
                content-size (block | log-and-permit | permit);
                default (block | log-and-permit | permit);
                engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit | permit);
                out-of-resources (block | log-and-permit | permit);
                timeout (block | log-and-permit | permit);
                too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit | permit);
            }
            notification-options {
                fallback-block {
                    administrator-email email-address;
                    allow-email;
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    display-host;
                    (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                    type (message | protocol-only);
                }
                fallback-non-block {
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
                }
                virus-detection {
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                    type (message | protocol-only);
                }
            }
            scan-options {
                content-size-limit value;
                (no-uri-check | uri-check);
                timeout value;
            }
            trickling {
                timeout value;
            }
        }

```

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 .

Description Create a profile for the Sophos antivirus engine. This profile includes all subsequent configuration options.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation • [Sophos Antivirus Configuration Overview on page 155](#)

profile (Security Web Filtering Juniper Enhanced)

Syntax `profile profile-name {
 category customurl-list name {
 action (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
 }
 custom-block-message value;
 custom-quarantine-message value;
 default (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
 fallback-settings {
 default (block | log-and-permit);
 server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
 timeout (block | log-and-permit);
 too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
 }
 no-safe-search;
 site-reputation-action {
 fairly-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
 harmful (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
 moderately-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
 suspicious (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
 very-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
 }
 timeout value;
}`

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 .

Description Create a profile for the juniper-enhanced feature. This profile includes all subsequent configuration options.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation • [Monitoring Web Filtering Configurations on page 249](#)

profile (Security Web Filtering Juniper Local)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre> profile <i>profile-name</i> { custom-block-message <i>value</i>; default (block log-and-permit permit); fallback-settings { default (block log-and-permit); server-connectivity (block log-and-permit); timeout (block log-and-permit); too-many-requests (block log-and-permit); } timeout <i>value</i>; } </pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-local] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 10.0 . |
| Description | Create a profile for the web-filtering juniper–local feature. This profile includes all subsequent configuration options. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Monitoring Web Filtering Configurations on page 249 • Example: Configuring Local Web Filtering on page 234 |

profile (Security Web Filtering Surf Control Integrated)

Syntax `profile profile-name {
 category customurl-list name {
 action (block | log-and-permit | permit);
 }
 custom-block-message value;
 default (block | log-and-permit | permit);
 fallback-settings {
 default (block | log-and-permit);
 server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
 timeout (block | log-and-permit);
 too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
 }
 timeout value;
 }`

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated]

Release Information The Surf-Control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1x49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.

Description Create a profile for the web-filtering surf-control-integrated feature. This profile includes all subsequent configuration options.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
 security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation • [Monitoring Web Filtering Configurations on page 249](#)

profile (Security Web Filtering Websense Redirect)

Syntax

```

profile profile-name {
    account value;
    custom-block-message value;
    fallback-settings {
        default (block | log-and-permit);
        server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
        timeout (block | log-and-permit);
        too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
    }
    server {
        host host-name;
        port number;
    }
    sockets value;
    timeout value;
}

```

Hierarchy Level [security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .

Description Create a profile for the web-filtering web-sense feature. This profile includes all subsequent configuration options.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Monitoring Web Filtering Configurations on page 249](#)

protocol-command

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>protocol-command <i>object-name</i> {
 value [<i>value</i>];
}</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm custom-objects] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Different protocols use different commands to communicate between servers and clients. By blocking or allowing certain commands, traffic can be controlled on the protocol command level. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>object-name</i>—Name of the command-list object.• <i>value value</i>—Value of the command-list object. You can configure multiple values separated by spaces and enclosed in square brackets. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understanding UTM Custom Objects on page 5 |

proxy (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>proxy {
 password <i>password-string</i>;
 port <i>port-number</i>;
 server <i>address-or-url</i>;
 username <i>name</i>;
}</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.2. |
| Description | Update the pattern file on the proxy server. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

quarantine-message (Security UTM)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>quarantine-message { type { custom-redirect-url; } url <i>url</i>; }</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Configure Juniper enhanced quarantine message settings. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • type—Specify the following type of the quarantine message: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • custom-redirect-url—Specify Custom redirect URL server. • url <i>url</i>—Specify an URL of the quarantine message. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

sbl

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre>sbl { profile <i>profile-name</i> { custom-tag-string [<i>string</i>]; (sbl-default-server no-sbl-default-server); spam-action (block tag-header tag-subject); } }</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-spam] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure UTM server-based antispam features. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

sbl-default-server

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | sbl-default-server; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Enable the default SBL server lookup. You should enable this feature if you are using server-based spam filtering. (The SBL server is predefined on the device. It ships with the name and address of the SBL server.) |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

scan-extension

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | scan-extension <i>filename</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options] |
| Release Information | The Kaspersky feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | For antivirus file extension scanning, configure the scan extension setting by specifying the name of the defined file extension list. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

scan-mode

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | scan-mode (all by-extension); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options] |
| Release Information | The scan-mode is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, the statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | You can scan all content or scan content with specific file extensions. You can use a file extension list to define a set of file extensions that are used in file extension scan mode. The antivirus module can then only scan files with extensions on the scan-extension list. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all—Scan all files. • by-extension—Scan only files with extensions specified in a file extension list custom object. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

scan-options (Security Antivirus Juniper Express Engine)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>scan-options { content-size-limit <i>value</i>; (intelligent-prescreening no-intelligent-prescreening); timeout <i>value</i>; }</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | The scan-options (Security Antivirus Juniper Express Engine) is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure the antivirus feature to scan specific types of traffic based on various scanning configuration parameters. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

scan-options (Security Antivirus Kaspersky Lab Engine)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <pre>scan-options {
 content-size-limit <i>value</i>;
 decompress-layer-limit <i>value</i>;
 (intelligent-prescreening no-intelligent-prescreening);
 scan-extension <i>filename</i>;
 scan-mode (all by-extension);
 timeout <i>value</i>;
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | The Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Configure the antivirus feature to scan specific types of traffic based on various scanning configuration parameters. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

scan-options (Security Antivirus Sophos Engine)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>scan-options {
 content-size-limit <i>value</i>;
 (no-uri-check uri-check);
 timeout <i>value</i>;
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Configure the antivirus feature to scan specific types of traffic based on various scanning configuration parameters. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

secondary-server

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | secondary-server {
address <i>ipv4-address</i> ;
login <i>sender-email-address</i> {
password <i>password</i> ;
}
} |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit smtp] |
| Release Information | Statement added in Junos OS Release 10.0. |
| Description | Configure Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) secondary server for access authorization for SMTP requests. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | system—To view this statement in the configuration.
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

server (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | server <i>address-or-url</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update proxy]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update proxy]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update proxy] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.2 . |
| Description | Set the IP address or URL for the proxy server. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

server (Security Web Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | server {
host <i>host-name</i> ;
port <i>number</i> ;
} |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile <i>profile-name</i>]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced] |
| Release Information | The surf-control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.
For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .
Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Set server parameters by entering the server name or IP address. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

server-connectivity

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | server-connectivity (block log-and-permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-settings]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-settings]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-settings] |
| Release Information | The surf-control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.
For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .
Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Fallback settings tell the system how to handle errors. This is the action that occurs when a request fails for this reason. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block—Log the error and deny the traffic• log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

sessions-per-client

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| Syntax | sessions-per-client {
limit <i>value</i> ;
over-limit (block log-and-permit);
} |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> traffic-options] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | In an attempt to consume all available resources and hinder the ability of the device, a malicious user might generate a large amount of traffic all at once. To prevent such activity from succeeding, you can impose a session throttle. |



NOTE: The `sessions-per-client limit` command supports the antispam, content filtering, and antivirus UTM features. It does not support Web filtering.

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

site-reputation-action

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>site-reputation-action {
 harmful (block log-and-permit permit quarantine);
 fairly-safe (block log-and-permit permit quarantine);
 moderately-safe (block log-and-permit permit quarantine);
 suspicious (block log-and-permit permit quarantine);
 very-safe (block log-and-permit permit quarantine);
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i> category <i>category-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 . |
| Description | Specify the action to be taken depending on the site reputation returned for all types of URLs whether it is categorized or uncategorized. |
| Options | <p>fairly-safe—Permit, log-and-permit, block or quarantine a request if a site-reputation of 70 through 79 is returned.</p> <p>harmful—Permit, log-and-permit, block or quarantine a request if a site-reputation of zero through 59 is returned.</p> <p>moderately-safe—Permit, log-and-permit, block or quarantine a request if a site-reputation of 80 through 89 is returned.</p> <p>suspicious—Permit, log-and-permit, block or quarantine a request if a site-reputation of 60 through 69 is returned.</p> <p>very-safe—Permit, log-and-permit, block or quarantine a request if a site-reputation of 90 through 100 is returned.</p> |
| Required Privilege Level | <p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p> |

size (Security Web Filtering Cache)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>size value;</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated cache]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced cache] |
| Release Information | The surf-control feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.
For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.
Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Set the cache size parameters for Web filtering. |
| Options | Range: 0 through 4096 kilobytes. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

smtp-profile (Security UTM Policy Antispam)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>smtp-profile profile-name;</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> anti-spam] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the antispam SMTP protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | |

smtp-profile (Security UTM Policy Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>smtp-profile profile-name;</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> anti-virus] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the antivirus SMTP protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

smtp-profile (Security UTM Policy Content Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | smtp-profile <i>profile-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> content-filtering] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the content-filtering SMTP protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

sockets

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | sockets <i>value</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Enter the number of sockets used for communicating between the client and server. The default is 1. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

sophos-engine

```
Syntax  sophos-engine {
        pattern-update {
            email-notify {
                admin-email email-address;
                custom-message message;
                custom-message-subject message-subject;
            }
            interval value;
            no-autoupdate;
            proxy {
                password password-string;
                port port-number;
                server address-or-url;
                username name;
            }
            url url;
        }
        profile <name> {
            fallback-options {
                content-size (block | log-and-permit | permit);
                default (block | log-and-permit | permit);
                engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit | permit);
                out-of-resources (block | log-and-permit | permit);
                timeout (block | log-and-permit | permit);
                too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit | permit);
            }
            notification-options {
                fallback-block {
                    administrator-email email-address;
                    allow-email;
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    display-host;
                    (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                    type (message | protocol-only);
                }
                fallback-non-block {
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
                }
                virus-detection {
                    custom-message message;
                    custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
                    type (message | protocol-only);
                }
            }
            scan-options {
                content-size-limit value;
                (no-uri-check | uri-check);
                timeout value;
            }
        }
    }
```

```
    }
    trickling {
        timeout value;
    }
}
sxl-retry value;
sxl-timeout seconds;
}
```

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Configure the UTM Sophos antivirus feature. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

spam-action

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | spam-action (block tag-header tag-subject); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-spam sbl profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure the action to be taken by the device when spam is detected. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block—Block e-mail.• tag-header—Tag header of e-mail.• tag-subject—Tag subject of e-mail. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Example: Configuring Server-Based Antispam Filtering on page 25• Example: Configuring Local List Antispam Filtering on page 32 |

surf-control-integrated

```

Syntax  surf-control-integrated {
            cache {
                size value;
                timeout value;
            }
            profile profile-name {
                category customurl-list name {
                    action (block | log-and-permit | permit);
                }
                custom-block-message value;
                default (block | log-and-permit | permit);
                fallback-settings {
                    default (block | log-and-permit);
                    server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
                    timeout (block | log-and-permit);
                    too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
                }
                timeout value;
            }
        }
        server {
            host host-name;
            port number;
        }
    }

```

Hierarchy Level [set security utm feature-profile web-filtering]

Release Information The surf-control- integrated feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .

Description Configure the UTM web-filtering integrated feature.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

sxl-retry

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>sxl-retry <i>value</i>;</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Configure the number of retry attempts to the remote Sophos Extensible List (SXL) server when a request timeout occurs. |
| Options | <i>value</i> —Number of retries.
Range: 0 through 5
Default: 1 |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

sxl-timeout

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>sxl-timeout <i>seconds</i>;</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Configure the timeout value for responses to a Sophos checksum or URI query. |
| Options | <i>seconds</i> —Number of seconds before timeout occurs.
Range: 1 through 5 seconds
Default: 2 seconds |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

timeout (Security Antivirus Fallback Options)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | timeout (block log-and-permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Scanning a complex file could consume resources and time. If the time it is taking to scan exceeds the timeout setting in the antivirus profile, the processing is aborted and the content is either passed or blocked without completing the virus checking. The decision is made based on the timeout fallback option. The default action is block. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • block—Log the error and deny the traffic • log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

timeout (Security Antivirus Fallback Options Sophos Engine)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | default (block log-and-permit permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Scanning a complex file could consume resources and time. If the time it is taking to scan exceeds the timeout setting in the antivirus profile, the processing is aborted and the content is either passed or blocked without completing the virus checking. The decision is made based on the timeout fallback option. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • block—Log the error and deny the traffic • log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic • permit—Permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

timeout (Security Antivirus Scan Options)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | timeout <i>value</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | The scanning timeout value includes the time frame from when the scan request is generated to when the scan result is returned by the scan engine. The time range can be 1 to 1800 seconds. By default, it is 180 seconds. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

timeout (Security Web Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | timeout <i>value</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile <i>profile-name</i>]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .
Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Enter a timeout limit for requests. Once this limit is reached, fail mode settings are applied. The default here is 15 seconds. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

timeout (Security Web Filtering Cache)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | timeout <i>value</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated cache]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced cache] |
| Release Information | The surf-control-integrated feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .
Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Set the cache timeout parameters for surf-control-integrated web filtering (24 hours is the default and the maximum allowed life span of cached items). |
| Options | Range: 1 through 1800 minutes. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

timeout (Security Web Filtering Fallback Settings)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | timeout (block log-and-permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-settings]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-settings]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-settings] |
| Release Information | The surf-control-integrated feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .
Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Fallback settings tell the system how to handle errors. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic block—Log the error and deny the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

too-many-requests (Security Antivirus Fallback Options)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | too-many-requests (block log-and-permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | If the total number of messages received concurrently exceeds 4000, the content is either passed or blocked depending on the too-many-request fallback option. The default action is block. (The allowed request limit is not configurable.) |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block—Log the error and deny the traffic• log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

too-many-requests (Security Antivirus Fallback Options Sophos Engine)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | default (block log-and-permit permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-options] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | If the total number of messages received concurrently exceeds the device limits, the content is either passed or blocked depending on the too-many-request fallback option. (The allowed request limit is not configurable.) |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• block—Log the error and deny the traffic• log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic• permit—Permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

too-many-requests (Security Web Filtering Fallback Settings)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | too-many-requests (block log-and-permit); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-settings]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-settings]
[edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering juniper-enhanced profile <i>profile-name</i> fallback-settings] |
| Release Information | The surf-control-integrated feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .
Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | If the total number of messages received concurrently exceeds the device limits, the content is either passed or blocked depending on the too-many-request fallback option. The default action is BLOCK. (The allowed request limit is not configurable.) |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • block—Log the error and deny the traffic • log-and-permit—Log the error and permit the traffic |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

to-zone (Security Policies)

Syntax `to-zone zone-name {
 policy policy-name {
 description description;
 match {
 application {
 [application];
 any;
 }
 destination-address {
 [address];
 any;
 any-ipv4;
 any-ipv6;
 }
 source-address {
 [address];
 any;
 any-ipv4;
 any-ipv6;
 }
 source-identity {
 [role-name];
 any;
 authenticated-user;
 unauthenticated-user;
 unknown-user;
 }
 }
 scheduler-name scheduler-name;
 then {
 count {
 alarm {
 per-minute-threshold number;
 per-second-threshold number;
 }
 }
 deny;
 log {
 session-close;
 session-init;
 }
 permit {
 application-services {
 application-firewall {
 rule-set rule-set-name;
 }
 application-traffic-control {
 rule-set rule-set-name;
 }
 gprs-gtp-profile profile-name;
 gprs-sctp-profile profile-name;
 idp;
 }
 }
 }`

```

    redirect-wx | reverse-redirect-wx;
    ssl-proxy {
        profile-name profile-name;
    }
    uac-policy {
        captive-portal captive-portal;
    }
    utm-policy policy-name;
}
destination-address {
    drop-translated;
    drop-untranslated;
}
firewall-authentication {
    pass-through {
        access-profile profile-name;
        client-match user-or-group-name;
        ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
        web-redirect;
        web-redirect-to-https;
    }
    web-authentication {
        client-match user-or-group-name;
    }
}
services-offload;
tcp-options {
    sequence-check-required;
    syn-check-required;
}
tunnel {
    ipsec-group-vpn group-vpn;
    ipsec-vpn vpn-name;
    pair-policy pair-policy;
}
}
reject;
}
}

```

Hierarchy Level [edit security policies from-zone *zone-name*]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. Support for the **services-offload** and **junos-host** options added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for the **source-identity** option added in Junos OS Release 12.1. Support for the **ssl-termination-profile** and **web-redirect-to-https** options added in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.

Description Specify a destination zone to be associated with the security policy.

- Options**
- **zone-name**—Name of the destination zone object.
 - **junos-host**—Default security zone for self-traffic of the device.

The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- *Security Policies Overview*
- *Understanding Security Policy Rules*
- *Understanding Security Policy Elements*

traceoptions (Security Antispam)

Syntax traceoptions flag *flag*;

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm feature-profile anti-spam]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .

Description Define tracing operations for UTM antispam features.

Options

- *flag*:
 - **all**—Enable all antispam trace flags.
 - **manager** —Trace antispam manager information.
 - **sbl**—Trace SBL server information.

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

traceoptions (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | traceoptions flag <i>flag</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Define tracing operations for UTM antivirus features. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • flag—Trace operation to perform. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple flag statements. • all—Enable trace all antivirus trace options. • basic—Trace antivirus module generic basic information. • detail—Trace antivirus module generic detail information. • engine—Trace scan engine information. • event—Trace communication events between routing engine side processes. • ipc—Trace communication events with Packet Forwarding Engine. • manager—Trace antivirus manager process activities. • pattern—Trace detail information of pattern loading. • sendmail—Trace mail notifying process activities. • statistics—Trace statistics information. • updater—Trace pattern updater process activities. • worker—Trace antivirus worker process activities. |
| Required Privilege Level | trace—To view this statement in the configuration.
trace-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

traceoptions (Security Application Proxy)

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre>traceoptions {
 flag <i>flag</i>;
}</pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm application-proxy] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure tracing options for application proxy. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• flag—Trace operation to perform. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple flag statements.• abort—Trace aborted sessions for application proxy.• all—Trace with all flags enabled.• anti-virus—Trace anti-virus information.• application-objects—Trace application-proxy objects information.• basic—Trace application-proxy related basic information.• buffer— Trace application-proxy data buffer information.• connection-rating—Trace connection rating information.• detail—Trace application-proxy related detailed information.• express-anti-virus—Trace anti-virus express engine information.• ftp-control—Trace FTP control connection information.• ftp-data—Trace FTP data connection information.• http—Trace HTTP protocol information.• imap—Trace IMAP protocol information.• memory—Trace memory usage.• mime—Trace MIME parser information.• parser— Trace protocol parser information.• pfe—Trace communication with PFE.• pop3—Trace POP3 protocol information.• queue—Trace queue information.• regex-engine—Trace Pattern Match Engine (PME) information.• smtp—Trace SMTP protocol information.• sophos-anti-virus—Trace anti-virus sophos engine information.• tcp—Trace TCP level information. |

- **timer**—Trace timer processing.
- **utm-realtime**—Trace application-proxy realtime-thread information

Required Privilege trace—To view this statement in the configuration.
Level trace-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

traceoptions (Security Content Filtering)

Syntax traceoptions flag *flag*;

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .

Description Define tracing options for content filtering features.

- Options**
- **flag**:
 - **all**—Enable all content filtering trace flags.
 - **basic** —Trace content filtering basic information.
 - **detail**—Trace content filtering detailed information.

Required Privilege security—To view this statement in the configuration.
Level security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

traceoptions (Security UTM)

Syntax traceoptions flag *flag*;

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .

Description Define tracing operations for UTM features.

- Options**
- **flag**—Trace operation to perform. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple **flag** statements.
 - **all**—Enable trace for all UTM trace options.
 - **cli**—Trace CLI configuration activity and command changes.
 - **daemon**—Trace daemon information.
 - **ipc**—Trace communication events with Packet Forwarding Engine (PFE).
 - **pfe**—Trace PFE information.

Required Privilege trace—To view this statement in the configuration.
Level trace-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

traceoptions (Security Web Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | traceoptions flag <i>flag</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering] |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 10.1 .
Command introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Define tracing operations for individual Web filtering modules. To specify more than one tracing operation, include multiple flag statements. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• flag:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Enable all Web filtering trace flags.• basic —Trace basic information on the Web filtering module.• cache—Enable Web filtering flags for the Web filtering cache maintained on the Web filtering module.• enhanced—Enable Web filtering flags for processing through Enhanced Web Filtering.• heartbeat—Trace connectivity information with Web filter server.• ipc—Trace Web filtering IPC messages.• packet—Trace packet information from session management.• profile—Trace profile configuration information.• requests—Trace requests sent to Web filter server.• response—Trace response received from Web filter server.• session manager—Trace session management information.• socket—Trace the communication socket with Web filter server.• timer—Trace aging information for requests sent to server. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |


traceoptions (SMTP)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre> traceoptions { flag { all; configuration; IPC; protocol-exchange; send-request; } } </pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit smtp] |
| Release Information | Statement added in Junos OS Release 10.0. |
| Description | Set the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) traceoptions. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | system—To view this statement in the configuration.
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • utm on page 401 |

traffic-options

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <pre> traffic-options { sessions-per-client { limit <i>value</i>; over-limit (block log-and-permit); } } </pre> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i>] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | In an attempt to consume all available resources and hinder the ability of the device, a malicious user might generate a large amount of traffic all at once. To prevent such activity from succeeding, you can impose a session throttle. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

trickling

| | |
|---|--|
| Syntax | trickling {
timeout <i>value</i> ;
} |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i>] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Statement updated for Sophos support in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | HTTP trickling is a mechanism used to prevent the HTTP client or server from timing-out during a file transfer or during antivirus scanning. HTTP Trickling is time-based and there is only one parameter to configure for this feature, which is the timeout Interval. By default, trickling is disabled. |
| <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div style="margin-left: 10px;"> <p>WARNING: When you enable the trickling option, keep in mind that trickling might send part of a file to the client during its antivirus scan. It is therefore possible that some of the content could be received by the client before the file has been fully scanned.</p> </div> </div> | |
| Options | value —Timeout interval in seconds.
Range: 0 through 600 seconds |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

type (Security Antivirus Feature Profile)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | type (juniper-express-engine kaspersky-lab-engine sophos-engine); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus] |
| Release Information | The Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Statement updated for Sophos in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Set the antivirus engine that will be used on the device. You can only have one engine type running and you must restart the device if you change engines. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

type (Security Content Filtering Notification Options)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | type (message protocol-only); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | When content is blocked, the client generally still receives a successful response code but with modified content (file replacement) containing a warning message. But with protocol-only notifications, a protocol-specific error code might be returned to the client. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • message—Send a generic notification. • protocol-only—Send a protocol-specific notification. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

type (Security Fallback Block)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | type (message protocol-only); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options fallback-block] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | You can configure notifications for both fallback blocking and fallback nonblocking actions. With protocol-only notifications, a protocol-specific error code may be returned to the client. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • message—Send a generic notification. • protocol-only—Send a protocol-specific notification. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

type (Security Virus Detection)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | type (message protocol-only); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options virus-detection] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | When content is blocked because a virus is found or a scan error occurs, the client generally still receives a successful response code but with modified content (file replacement) containing a warning message. But with protocol-only notifications, a protocol-specific error code might be returned to the client. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• message—Send a generic notification.• protocol-only—Send a protocol-specific notification. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

type (Security Web Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | type (juniper-enhanced juniper-local surf-control-integrated websense-redirect); |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering] |
| Release Information | The surf-control-integrated feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . Command introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4 for Enhanced Web Filtering. |
| Description | Define the type of Web filtering solution or URL filtering solution used by the device. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• juniper-enhanced—Enable Enhanced Web Filtering on the device.• juniper-local —Enable Juniper Networks local URL filtering on the device.• surf-control-integrated—Enable integrated Web filtering on the device.• websense-redirect—Redirect the URL to the Websense server. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

upload-profile (Security Antivirus FTP)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | upload-profile <i>profile-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> anti-virus ftp] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the antivirus FTP (upload) protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

upload-profile (Security Content Filtering FTP)

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | upload-profile <i>profile-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> content-filtering ftp] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for the content-filtering FTP (upload) protocol and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

uri-check

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | uri-check; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> scan-options] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | <p>Perform Sophos antivirus Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) checking. URI checking is a way of analyzing URI content in HTTP traffic against a remote Sophos database to identify malware or malicious content. URI checking is on by default.</p> <p>You can disable Sophos antivirus URI checking with the no-uri-check statement.</p> |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

url (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | url <i>url</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 for Juniper Express engine and Kaspersky Lab engine. Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Specify the URL for the pattern database. You should not change the default URL unless you are experiencing problems with it and have called for support. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

url-blacklist

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | url-blacklist <i>listname</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | This is a global blacklist category, blocking content for Web filtering. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

url-pattern

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <code>url-pattern <i>object-name</i> {
 value [<i>value</i>];
}</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm custom-objects] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists. These are lists of patterns that bypass scanning. |



WARNING: Custom category does not take precedence over predefined categories when it has the same name as one of the predefined categories. We do not recommend having a custom category name be the same as the predefined category name.

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>object-name</i>—Name of the URL list object. • <i>value value</i>—Value of the URL list object. You can configure multiple values separated by spaces and enclosed in square brackets. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Building Blocks Feature Guide for Security Devices</i> |

url-whitelist (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | <code>url-whitelist <i>listname</i>;</code> |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . |
| Description | A URL whitelist is a unique custom list that you define in which all the URLs or IP addresses in that list for a specified category are always bypassed for scanning. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

url-whitelist (Security Web Filtering)

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| Syntax | url-whitelist <i>listname</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering] |
| Description | A URL whitelist is a unique custom list that you define in which all the URLs or IP addresses in that list for a specified category are always bypassed for filtering |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege | security—To view this statement in the configuration. |
| Level | security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

username (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Syntax | username <i>name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update proxy]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update proxy]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update proxy] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.2 . |
| Description | Set the username for the proxy server. |
| Required Privilege | security—To view this statement in the configuration. |
| Level | security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

utm

```

Syntax  utm {
        application-proxy {
            traceoptions {
                flag flag;
            }
        }
        custom-objects {
            custom-url-category object-name {
                value [value];
            }
            filename-extension object-name {
                value [value];
            }
            mime-pattern object-name {
                value [value];
            }
            protocol-command object-name {
                value [value];
            }
            url-pattern object-name {
                value [value];
            }
        }
        feature-profile {
            anti-spam {
                address-blacklist list-name;
                address-whitelist list-name;
                sbl {
                    profile profile-name {
                        custom-tag-string [string];
                        (sbl-default-server | no-sbl-default-server);
                        spam-action (block | tag-header | tag-subject);
                    }
                }
            }
            traceoptions {
                flag flag;
            }
        }
        anti-virus {
            juniper-express-engine {
                pattern-update {
                    email-notify {
                        admin-email email-address;
                        custom-message message;
                        custom-message-subject message-subject;
                    }
                }
                interval value;
                no-autoupdate;
                proxy {
                    password password-string;
                    port port-number;
                    server address-or-url;
                }
            }
        }
    }

```

```
        username name;
    }
    url url;
}
profile profile-name {
    fallback-options {
        content-size (block | log-and-permit);
        default (block | log-and-permit);
        engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit);
        out-of-resources (block | (log-and-permit);
        timeout (block | log-and-permit);
        too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
    }
    notification-options {
        fallback-block {
            administrator-email email-address;
            allow-email;
            custom-message message;
            custom-message-subject message-subject;
            display-host;
            (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
            type (message | protocol-only);
        }
        fallback-non-block {
            custom-message message;
            custom-message-subject message-subject;
            (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
        }
        virus-detection {
            custom-message message;
            custom-message-subject message-subject;
            (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
            type (message | protocol-only);
        }
    }
}
scan-options {
    content-size-limit value;
    (intelligent-prescreening | no-intelligent-prescreening);
    timeout value;
}
trickling {
    timeout value;
}
}
kaspersky-lab-engine {
    pattern-update {
        email-notify {
            admin-email email-address;
            custom-message message;
            custom-message-subject message-subject;
        }
        interval value;
        no-autoupdate;
        proxy {
            password password-string;
```

```

    port port-number;
    server address-or-url;
    username name;
  }
  url url;
}
profile profile-name {
  fallback-options {
    content-size (block | log-and-permit);
    corrupt-file (block | log-and-permit);
    decompress-layer (block | log-and-permit);
    default (block | log-and-permit);
    engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit);
    out-of-resources (block | log-and-permit);
    password-file (block | log-and-permit);
    timeout (block | log-and-permit);
    too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
  }
  notification-options {
    fallback-block {
      administrator-email email-address;
      allow-email;
      custom-message message;
      custom-message-subject message-subject;
      display-host;
      (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
      type (message | protocol-only);
    }
    fallback-non-block {
      custom-message message;
      custom-message-subject message-subject;
      (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
    }
    virus-detection {
      custom-message message;
      custom-message-subject message-subject;
      (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
      type (message | protocol-only);
    }
  }
}
scan-options {
  content-size-limit value;
  decompress-layer-limit value;
  (intelligent-prescreening | no-intelligent-prescreening);
  scan-extension filename;
  scan-mode (all | by-extension);
  timeout value;
}
trickling {
  timeout value;
}
}
mime-whitelist {
  exception listname;
  list listname {

```

```
        exception listname;
    }
}
sophos-engine {
  pattern-update {
    email-notify {
      admin-email email-address;
      custom-message message;
      custom-message-subject message-subject;
    }
    interval value;
    no-autoupdate;
    proxy {
      password password-string;
      port port-number;
      server address-or-url;
      username name;
    }
    url url;
  }
}
profile <name> {
  fallback-options {
    content-size (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    default (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    engine-not-ready (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    out-of-resources (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    timeout (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit | permit);
  }
  notification-options {
    fallback-block {
      administrator-email email-address;
      allow-email;
      custom-message message;
      custom-message-subject message-subject;
      display-host;
      (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
      type (message | protocol-only);
    }
    fallback-non-block {
      custom-message message;
      custom-message-subject message-subject;
      (notify-mail-recipient | no-notify-mail-recipient);
    }
    virus-detection {
      custom-message message;
      custom-message-subject message-subject;
      (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
      type (message | protocol-only);
    }
  }
}
scan-options {
  content-size-limit value;
  (no-uri-check | uri-check);
  timeout value;
}
```

```

        trickling {
            timeout value;
        }
    }
    sxl-retry value;
    sxl-timeout seconds;
}
traceoptions {
    flag flag;
}
type (juniper-express-engine | kaspersky-lab-engine | sophos-engine);
url-whitelist listname;
}
content-filtering {
    profile profile-name {
        block-command protocol-command-list;
        block-content-type (activex | exe | http-cookie | java-applet | zip);
        block-extension extension-list;
        block-mime {
            exception list-name;
            list list-name;
        }
        notification-options {
            custom-message message;
            (notify-mail-sender | no-notify-mail-sender);
            type (message | protocol-only);
        }
        permit-command protocol-command-list;
    }
    traceoptions {
        flag flag;
    }
}
web-filtering {
    juniper-enhanced {
        cache {
            size value;
            timeout value;
        }
        profile profile-name {
            block-message {
                type {
                    custom-redirect-url;
                }
                url url;
            }
            quarantine-message {
                type {
                    custom-redirect-url;
                }
                url url;
            }
            category customurl-list name {
                action (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
            }
            custom-block-message value;
        }
    }
}

```

```
custom-quarantine-message value;  
default (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);  
fallback-settings {  
    default (block | log-and-permit);  
    server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);  
    timeout (block | log-and-permit);  
    too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);  
}  
no-safe-search;  
site-reputation-action {  
    fairly-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);  
    harmful (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);  
    moderately-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);  
    suspicious (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);  
    very-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);  
}  
timeout value;  
}  
server {  
    host host-name;  
    port number;  
}  
}  
juniper-local {  
    profile profile-name {  
        custom-block-message value;  
        default (block | log-and-permit | permit);  
        fallback-settings {  
            default (block | log-and-permit);  
            server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);  
            timeout (block | log-and-permit);  
            too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);  
        }  
        timeout value;  
    }  
}  
surf-control-integrated {  
    cache {  
        size value;  
        timeout value;  
    }  
    profile profile-name {  
        category customurl-list name {  
            action (block | log-and-permit | permit);  
        }  
        custom-block-message value;  
        default (block | log-and-permit | permit);  
        fallback-settings {  
            default (block | log-and-permit);  
            server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);  
            timeout (block | log-and-permit);  
            too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);  
        }  
        timeout value;  
    }  
    server {
```

```

        host host-name;
        port number;
    }
}
traceoptions {
    flag flag;
}
type (juniper-enhanced | juniper-local | surf-control-integrated | websense-redirect);
url-blacklist listname;
url-whitelist listname;
websense-redirect {
    profile profile-name {
        account value;
        custom-block-message value;
        fallback-settings {
            default (block | log-and-permit);
            server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
            timeout (block | log-and-permit);
            too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
        }
        server {
            host host-name;
            port number;
        }
        sockets value;
        timeout value;
    }
}
}
}
ipc {
    traceoptions flag flag;
}
traceoptions {
    flag flag;
}
utm-policy policy-name {
    anti-spam {
        smtp-profile profile-name;
    }
    anti-virus {
        ftp {
            download-profile profile-name;
            upload-profile profile-name;
        }
        http-profile profile-name;
        imap-profile profile-name;
        pop3-profile profile-name;
        smtp-profile profile-name;
    }
    content-filtering {
        ftp {
            download-profile profile-name;
            upload-profile profile-name;
        }
        http-profile profile-name;
    }
}

```

```
imap-profile profile-name;  
pop3-profile profile-name;  
smtp-profile profile-name;  
}  
traffic-options {  
  sessions-per-client {  
    limit value;  
    over-limit (block | log-and-permit);  
  }  
}  
web-filtering {  
  http-profile profile-name;  
}  
}  
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security]

Release Information The Kaspersky, surf-control-integrated, and express antivirus features are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .

Description Configure UTM features.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

utm-policy

```
Syntax  utm-policy policy-name {
        anti-spam {
            smtp-profile profile-name;
        }
        anti-virus {
            ftp {
                download-profile profile-name;
                upload-profile profile-name;
            }
            http-profile profile-name;
            imap-profile profile-name;
            pop3-profile profile-name;
            smtp-profile profile-name;
        }
        content-filtering {
            ftp {
                download-profile profile-name;
                upload-profile profile-name;
            }
            http-profile profile-name;
            imap-profile profile-name;
            pop3-profile profile-name;
            smtp-profile profile-name;
        }
        traffic-options {
            sessions-per-client {
                limit value;
                over-limit (block | log-and-permit);
            }
        }
        web-filtering {
            http-profile profile-name;
        }
    }
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.

Description Configure a UTM policy for antivirus, antispam, content-filtering, traffic-options, and Web-filtering protocols and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it.

Options *policy-name*—Specify name of the UTM policy.

The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Security Policies Overview](#)

- *Understanding Security Policy Rules*
- *Understanding Security Policy Elements*

utm-policy (Application Services)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | utm-policy <i>policy-name</i> ; |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit application-services] |
| Release Information | Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1. |
| Description | Configure a UTM policy for application services and attach this policy to a security profile to implement it. |
| Options | <i>policy-name</i> —Specify the name of the UTM policy. |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

virus-detection (Security Antivirus)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | virus-detection {
custom-message <i>message</i> ;
custom-message-subject <i>message-subject</i> ;
(notify-mail-sender no-notify-mail-sender);
type (message protocol-only);
} |
| Hierarchy Level | [edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options]
[edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine profile <i>profile-name</i> notification-options] |
| Release Information | The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus features are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . Support for Sophos engine added in Junos OS Release 11.1 . |
| Description | Configure a notification to send when a virus is detected. |
| Options | The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer . |
| Required Privilege Level | security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration. |

web-filtering

```

Syntax  web-filtering {
        url-whitelist custwhitelist;
        url-blacklist custblacklist;
        http-reassemble;
        http-persist;
        type juniper-enhanced;
        juniper-enhanced {
            cache {
                timeout 1800;
                size 500;
            }
            server {
                host rp.cloud.threatseeker.com;
                port 80;
            }
            profile junos-wf-enhanced-default {
                category {
                    Enhanced_Hacking {
                        action log-and-permit;
                    }
                    Enhanced_Government {
                        action quarantine;
                    }
                }
            }
            site-reputation-action {
                very-safe permit;
                moderately-safe log-and-permit;
                fairly-safe log-and-permit;
                harmful block;
                suspicious block;
            }
            default block;
            custom-block-message "****access denied ****";
            fallback-settings {
                default block;
                server-connectivity block;
                timeout block;
                too-many-requests block;
            }
            timeout 10;
            no-safe-search;
        }
        utm-policy mypolicy {
            web-filtering {
                http-profile my_ewfprofile01;
            }
        }
    }
web-filtering {
    juniper-enhanced {
        cache {
            size value;
        }
    }
}

```

```
    timeout value;
}
profile profile-name {
  category customurl-list name {
    action (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
  }
  custom-block-message value;
  custom-quarantine-message value;
  default (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
  fallback-settings {
    default (block | log-and-permit);
    server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
    timeout (block | log-and-permit);
    too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
  }
  no-safe-search;
  site-reputation-action {
    fairly-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
    harmful (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
    moderately-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
    suspicious (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
    very-safe (block | log-and-permit | permit | quarantine);
  }
  timeout value;
}
server {
  host host-name;
  port number;
}
}
juniper-local {
  profile profile-name {
    custom-block-message value;
    default (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    fallback-settings {
      default (block | log-and-permit);
      server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
      timeout (block | log-and-permit);
      too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
    }
    timeout value;
  }
}
surf-control-integrated {
  cache {
    size value;
    timeout value;
  }
  profile profile-name {
    category customurl-list name {
      action (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    }
    custom-block-message value;
    default (block | log-and-permit | permit);
    fallback-settings {
      default (block | log-and-permit);
    }
  }
}
```

```

        server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
        timeout (block | log-and-permit);
        too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
    }
    timeout value;
}
server {
    host host-name;
    port number;
}
}
traceoptions flag flag;
type (juniper-enhanced | juniper-local | surf-control-integrated | websense-redirect);
url-blacklist listname;
url-whitelist listname;
websense-redirect {
    profile profile-name {
        account value;
        custom-block-message value;
        fallback-settings {
            default (block | log-and-permit);
            server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
            timeout (block | log-and-permit);
            too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
        }
        server {
            host host-name;
            port number;
        }
        sockets value;
        timeout value;
    }
}
}

```

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm feature-profile]

Release Information The Kaspersky, surf-control-integrated and express antivirus features are not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.

Description Configure UTM web-filtering features.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding Local Web Filtering on page 232](#)
- [Monitoring Web Filtering Configurations on page 249](#)

websense-redirect

Syntax websense-redirect {
 profile *profile-name* {
 account *value*;
 custom-block-message *value*;
 fallback-settings {
 default (block | log-and-permit);
 server-connectivity (block | log-and-permit);
 timeout (block | log-and-permit);
 too-many-requests (block | log-and-permit);
 }
 server {
 host *host-name*;
 port *number*;
 }
 sockets *value*;
 timeout *value*;
 }
}

Hierarchy Level [edit security utm feature-profile web-filtering]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .

Description Configure the websense redirect engine features.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Example: Enhancing Security by Configuring Redirect Web Filtering Using Custom Objects on page 241](#)

CHAPTER 22

Operational Commands

- clear security utm anti-spam statistics
- clear security utm antivirus statistics
- clear security utm content-filtering statistics
- clear security utm session
- clear security utm web-filtering statistics
- request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine
- request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine
- request security utm anti-virus sophos-engine
- request system license update
- show configuration smtp
- show groups junos-defaults
- show security log
- show security policies
- show security utm anti-spam statistics
- show security utm anti-spam status
- show security utm anti-virus statistics
- show security utm anti-virus status
- show security utm content-filtering statistics
- show security utm session
- show security utm status
- show security utm web-filtering statistics
- show security utm web-filtering status

clear security utm anti-spam statistics

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | clear security utm anti-spam statistics |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 . Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4 . |
| Description | Clear antispam statistics information. With chassis cluster support for UTM, statistics from both the nodes is cleared. |
| Required Privilege Level | clear |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• show security utm anti-spam statistics on page 438• show security utm anti-spam status on page 439 |
| Output Fields | This command produces no output. |

Sample Output

clear security utm anti-spam statistics

```
user@host> clear security utm anti-spam statistics
```


clear security utm antivirus statistics

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | clear security utm anti-virus statistics |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos Antivirus added in Junos OS Release 11.1.
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4. |
| Description | Clear antivirus statistics information. With chassis cluster support for UTM, statistics from both the nodes are cleared. |
| Required Privilege Level | clear |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• show security utm anti-virus statistics on page 440• show security utm anti-virus status on page 442• request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine on page 421• request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine on page 422 |
| Output Fields | This command produces no output. |

clear security utm content-filtering statistics

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | clear security utm content-filtering statistics |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4. |
| Description | Clear content-filtering statistics information. With chassis cluster support for UTM, statistics from both the nodes are cleared. |
| Required Privilege Level | clear |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• show security utm content-filtering statistics on page 444 |
| Output Fields | This command produces no output. |

clear security utm session

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | clear security utm session |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4. |
| Description | Clear UTM session information. With chassis cluster support for UTM, sessions on both the nodes are cleared. |
| Required Privilege Level | clear |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• show security utm session on page 445• show security utm status on page 446 |
| Output Fields | This command produces no output. |

clear security utm web-filtering statistics

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | clear security utm web-filtering statistics |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4 . |
| Description | Clear web filtering statistics information. With chassis cluster support for UTM, statistics from both the nodes is cleared. |
| Required Privilege Level | clear |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• show security utm web-filtering statistics on page 447• show security utm web-filtering status on page 450 |
| Output Fields | This command produces no output. |

request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine |
| Release Information | The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4 . |
| Description | The Express Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, manually update the express antivirus pattern database using the command described. You can update the express antivirus pattern database automatically or manually. With full chassis cluster support for UTM this command is operational on both the nodes. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • pattern-delete — Delete the current express antivirus pattern database. • pattern-reload — Reload the express antivirus pattern database. • pattern-update — Update the express antivirus pattern database with the latest signatures. |
| Required Privilege Level | maintenance |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • clear security utm antivirus statistics on page 417 • show security utm anti-virus statistics on page 440 • show security utm anti-virus status on page 442 |
| List of Sample Output | request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update on page 421 |
| Output Fields | request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update

When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request. |

Sample Output

request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update

```
user@host> request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update
```

request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 .
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4 . |
| Description | The Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1x49-D10 onwards. For previous releases, manually update the full file-based antivirus pattern database using the commands described. You can update the full file-based antivirus pattern database automatically or manually. With full chassis cluster support for UTM this command is operational on both the nodes. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• pattern-delete — Delete the current full file-based antivirus pattern database.• pattern-reload — Reload the full file-based antivirus pattern database.• pattern-update — Update the full file-based antivirus pattern database with the latest signatures. |
| Required Privilege Level | maintenance |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine on page 421• clear security utm antivirus statistics on page 417• show security utm anti-virus statistics on page 440• show security utm anti-virus status on page 442 |
| List of Sample Output | request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update on page 422 |
| Output Fields | request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update

When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request. |

Sample Output

request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update

```
user@host> request security anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update
```

request security utm anti-virus sophos-engine

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | request security utm anti-virus sophos-engine |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 .
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4 . |
| Description | Manually update the Sophos antivirus pattern database using the command described. To update automatically you use the configuration statement set security utm feature-profile anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update interval seconds . With full chassis cluster support for UTM this command is operational on both the nodes. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • pattern-delete — Delete the current Sophos antivirus pattern database. • pattern-reload — Reload the Sophos antivirus pattern database. • pattern-update — Update the Sophos antivirus pattern database with the latest signatures. |
| Required Privilege Level | maintenance |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • clear security utm antivirus statistics on page 417 • show security utm anti-virus statistics on page 440 • show security utm anti-virus status on page 442 |
| List of Sample Output | request security utm anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update on page 423 |
| Output Fields | request security utm anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update

When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request. |

Sample Output

request security utm anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update

```
user@host> request security utm anti-virus sophos-engine pattern-update
```

request system license update

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <code>request system license update</code> |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. |
| Description | Start autoupdating license keys from the LMS server. |
| Options | <code>trial</code> —Starts autoupdating trial license keys from the LMS server. |
| Required Privilege Level | maintenance |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>show system license (View)</i> |
| List of Sample Output | request system license update on page 424
request system license update trial on page 424 |
| Output Fields | When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request. |

Sample Output

request system license update

```
user@host> request system license update
```

```
Trying to update license keys from https://ae1.juniper.net has been sent, use  
show system license to check status.
```

request system license update trial

```
user@host> request system license update trial
```

```
Request to automatically update trial license keys from https://ae1.juniper.net  
has been sent, use show system license to check status.
```


show configuration smtp

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | show configuration smtp |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 10.0 . |
| Description | Display complete SMTP information. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • apply-groups—Groups from which SMTP inherits configuration data. • apply-groups-except—Groups from which SMTP restricts inheriting configuration data. |
| Required Privilege Level | view |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • utm on page 401 |
| List of Sample Output | show configuration smtp on page 425 |
| Output Fields | Table 7 on page 425 describes the output fields for the show configuration smtp command. |

Table 7: show configuration smtp

| Field Name | Field Description | Level of Output |
|------------|---|-----------------|
| address | SMTP server's IPv4 address | All levels |
| login | Configure a mail sender account to the server | All levels |
| password | Default sender password for user authentication | All levels |

Sample Output

show configuration smtp

```

user@host> show configuration smtp
primary-server {
    address 218.102.48.213;
    login "dayone@example.com" {
        password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
    }
}

```

show groups junos-defaults

Syntax show groups junos-defaults

Release Information Command introduced before Junos OS Release 7.4.

Description Display the full set of available preset statements from the Junos OS defaults group.

```
user@host# show groups junos-defaults
groups {
  junos-defaults {
    applications {
      # File Transfer Protocol
      application junos-ftp {
        application-protocol ftp;
        protocol tcp;
        destination-port 21;
      }
      # Trivial File Transfer Protocol
      application junos-tftp {
        application-protocol tftp;
        protocol udp;
        destination-port 69;
      }
      # RPC port mapper on TCP
      application junos-rpc-portmap-tcp {
        application-protocol rpc-portmap;
        protocol tcp;
        destination-port 111;
      }
      # RPC port mapper on UDP
    }
  }
}
```

Required Privilege Level view

Related Documentation • [Using Junos OS Defaults Groups.](#)

show security log

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | <code>show security log {<i>all</i> <i>destination-address</i> <i>destination-port</i> <i>event-id</i> <i>failure</i> <i>interface-name</i> <i>newer-than</i> <i>older-than</i> <i>process</i> <i>protocol</i> <i>severity</i> <i>sort-by</i> <i>source-address</i> <i>source-port</i> <i>success</i> <i>user</i>}</code> |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 11.2 . |
| Description | Display security event logs. This command continuously displays security events on the screen. To stop the display, press Ctrl+c. |
| Options | <p>all—Displays all audit event logs stored in the device memory.</p> <p>destination-address—Displays audit event logs with the specified destination address.</p> <p>destination-port—Displays audit event logs with the specified destination port.</p> <p>event-id—Displays audit event logs with the specified event identification number.</p> <p>failure—Displays failed audit event logs.</p> <p>interface-name—Displays audit event logs with the specified interface.</p> <p>newer-than—Displays audit event logs newer than the specified date and time.</p> <p>older-than—Displays audit event logs older than the specified date and time.</p> <p>process—Displays audit event logs with the specified process that generated the event.</p> <p>protocol—Displays audit event logs generated through the specified protocol.</p> <p>severity—Displays audit event logs generated with the specified severity.</p> <p>sort-by—Displays audit event logs generated sorted with the specified options.</p> <p>source-address—Displays audit event logs with the specified source address.</p> <p>source-port—Displays audit event logs with the specified source port.</p> <p>success—Displays successful audit event logs.</p> <p>username—Displays audit event logs generated for the specified user.</p> |
| Required Privilege Level | view |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>exclude (Security Log)</i> <i>clear security log</i> |
| List of Sample Output | show security log on page 428 |

Output Fields Table 8 on page 428 lists the output fields for the **show security log** command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 8: show security log Output Fields

| Field Name | Field Description |
|------------|--|
| Event time | The timestamp of the events received.

On SRX Series devices, security logs were always timestamped using the UTC time zone by running set system time-zone utc and set security log utc-timestamp CLI commands. Now, time zone can be defined using the local time zone by running the set system time-zone time-zone command to specify the local time zone that the system should use when timestamping the security logs. |
| Message | Security events are listed. |

Sample Output

show security log

```

user@host> show security log
Event time      Message
2010-10-22 13:28:37 CST session created 1.1.1.2/1-->2.2.2.2/1308
icmp 1.1.1.2/1-->2.2.2.2/1308
None None 1 policy1 trustZone untrustZone 52 N/A(N/A) ge-0/0/1.0
2010-10-22 13:28:38 CST session created 1.1.1.2/1-->2.2.2.2/1308 icmp
1.1.1.2/1-->2.2.2.2/1308 None None 1 policy1 trustZone untrustZone 54 N/A(N/A)
ge-0/0/1.0

...

2010-10-22 13:36:12 CST session denied m icmp 1(8) policy1 trustZone untrustZone
N/A(N/A) ge-0/0/1.0
2010-10-22 13:36:14 CST session denied 1.1.1.2/2-->2.2.2.2/54812 icmp 1(8)
policy1 trustZone untrustZone N/A(N/A) ge-0/0/1.0

...

2010-10-27 15:50:11 CST IP spoofing! source: 2.2.2.20, destination: 2.2.2.2,
protocol-id: 17, zone name: trustZone, interface name: ge-0/0/1.0, action: drop
2010-10-27 15:50:11 CST IP spoofing! source: source: 2.2.2.20, destination:
2.2.2.2, protocol-id: 17, zone name: trustZone, interface name: ge-0/0/1.0, action:
drop

...

2011-02-18 15:53:34 CST PKID_PV_OBJECT_READ: A PKI object was read into memory
from /var/db/certs/common/certification-authority/ca-profile1-ca1.cert
2011-02-18 15:53:35 CST PKID_PV_OBJECT_READ: A PKI object was read into memory
from /var/db/certs/common/cr1/ca-profile1.cr1
2011-02-18 15:53:35 CST PKID_PV_OBJECT_READ: A PKI object was read into memory
from /var/db/certs/system-key-pair/system-generated.priv
2011-02-18 15:53:35 CST PKID_PV_OBJECT_READ: A PKI object was read into memory
from /var/db/certs/system-cert/system-generated.cert
2011-02-18 15:53:35 CST PKID_PV_OBJECT_READ: A PKI object was read into memory
from /var/db/certs/common/key-pair/cert1.priv
2011-02-18 15:53:42 CST PKID_PV_OBJECT_READ: A PKI object was read into memory
from /var/db/certs/common/key-pair/test2.priv

```

```

...
2011-03-14 23:00:40 PDT IDP_COMMIT_COMPLETED: IDP policy commit is complete.
                        IDP_POLICY_LOAD_FAILED: IDP policy loading failed ;poli
cy[/var/db/idpd/bins/.bin.gz.v], detector[/usr/libdata/libidp-detector.so.tgz.v]

, failure detail[Policy loading failed :: Policy file not found
2011-03-14 23:00:58 PDT ]
                        IDP_POLICY_LOAD_FAILED: IDP policy loading failed ;poli
cy[/var/db/idpd/bins/.bin.gz.v], detector[/usr/libdata/libidp-detector.so.tgz.v]

, failure detail[Policy loading failed :: Policy file not found
2011-03-14 23:00:58 PDT ]
                        IDP_POLICY_LOAD_FAILED: IDP policy loading failed ;poli
cy[/var/db/idpd/bins/.bin.gz.v], detector[/usr/libdata/libidp-detector.so.tgz.v]

, failure detail[Policy loading failed :: Policy file not found
2011-03-14 23:00:58 PDT ]

...
Event time      Message
2011-03-21 14:21:49 CST UI_CMDLINE_READ_LINE: User 'root', command 'set date ntp
9.9.9.1 source-address 6.6.6.1 '
2011-03-21 14:23:01 CST UI_CMDLINE_READ_LINE: User 'root', command 'set date ntp
9.9.9.1 source-address 6.6.6.1 .5 '
2011-03-21 14:23:05 CST KMD_PM_SA_ESTABLISHED: Local gateway: 7.7.7.1, Remote
gateway: 8.8.8.1, Local ID: ipv4(any:0,[0..3]=6.6.6.1), Remote ID:
ipv4(any:0,[0..3]=9.9.9.1), Direction: inbound, SPI: 37a2a179, AUX-SPI: 0, Mode:
tunnel, Type: dynamic
2011-03-21 14:23:05 CST KMD_PM_SA_ESTABLISHED: Local gateway: 7.7.7.1, Remote
gateway: 8.8.8.1, Local ID: ipv4(any:0,[0..3]=6.6.6.1), Remote ID:
ipv4(any:0,[0..3]=9.9.9.1), Direction: outbound, SPI: b2231c1f, AUX-SPI: 0, Mode:
tunnel, Type: dynamic
2011-03-21 14:23:08 CST UI_CMDLINE_READ_LINE: User 'root', command 'set date ntp
9.9.9.1 source-address 6.6.6.1 '
2011-03-21 14:23:13 CST UI_CMDLINE_READ_LINE: User 'root', command 'show security
log '

```

show security policies

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | show security policies
none
<detail>
policy-name <i>policy-name</i>
<global> |
| Release Information | Command modified in Junos OS Release 9.2. Support for IPv6 addresses added in Junos OS Release 10.2. Support for wildcard addresses added in Junos OS Release 11.1. Support for global policy added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for services offloading added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for source-identities added in Junos OS Release 12.1. The Description output field added in Junos OS Release 12.1. Support for negated address added in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10. The output fields for Policy Statistics expanded, and the output fields for the global and policy-name options expanded to include from-zone and to-zone global match criteria in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10. Support for the initial-tcp-mss and reverse-tcp-mss options added in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D20. Output field and description for source-end-user-profile option added in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70. |
| Description | Display a summary of all security policies configured on the device. If a particular policy is specified, display information specific to that policy. |
| Options | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• none—Display basic information about all configured policies.• detail—(Optional) Display a detailed view of all of the policies configured on the device.• policy-name <i>policy-name</i>—(Optional) Display information about a specified policy.• global—(Optional) Display information about global policies. |
| Required Privilege Level | view |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Security Policies Overview</i>• <i>Understanding Security Policy Rules</i>• <i>Understanding Security Policy Elements</i> |
| List of Sample Output | show security policies on page 433
show security policies policy-name detail on page 434
show security policies (Services-Offload) on page 435
show security policies (Device Identity) on page 435
show security policies detail on page 435
show security policies detail (TCP Options) on page 436
show security policies policy-name (Negated Address) on page 437
show security policies policy-name detail (Negated Address) on page 437
show security policies global on page 437 |
| Output Fields | Table 9 on page 431 lists the output fields for the show security policies command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear. |

Table 9: show security policies Output Fields

| Field Name | Field Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| From zone | Name of the source zone. |
| To zone | Name of the destination zone. |
| Policy | Name of the applicable policy. |
| Description | Description of the applicable policy. |
| State | <p>Status of the policy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • enabled: The policy can be used in the policy lookup process, which determines access rights for a packet and the action taken in regard to it. • disabled: The policy cannot be used in the policy lookup process, and therefore it is not available for access control. |
| Index | Internal number associated with the policy. |
| Sequence number | Number of the policy within a given context. For example, three policies that are applicable in a from-zoneA-to-zoneB context might be ordered with sequence numbers 1, 2, 3. Also, in a from-zoneC-to-zoneD context, four policies might have sequence numbers 1, 2, 3, 4. |
| Source addresses | <p>For standard display mode, the names of the source addresses for a policy. Address sets are resolved to their individual names.</p> <p>For detail display mode, the names and corresponding IP addresses of the source addresses for a policy. Address sets are resolved to their individual address name-IP address pairs.</p> |
| Destination addresses | Name of the destination address (or address set) as it was entered in the destination zone's address book. A packet's destination address must match this value for the policy to apply to it. |
| source-end-user-profile | Name of the device identity profile (referred to as end-user-profile in the CLI) that contains attributes, or characteristics of a device. Specification of the device identity profile in the source-end-user-profile field is part of the device identity feature. If a device matches the attributes specified in the profile and other security policy parameters, then the security policy's action is applied to traffic issuing from the device. |
| Source addresses (excluded) | Name of the source address excluded from the policy. |
| Destination addresses (excluded) | Name of the destination address excluded from the policy. |
| Source identities | One or more user roles specified for a policy. |

Table 9: show security policies Output Fields (*continued*)

| Field Name | Field Description |
|--|---|
| Applications | <p>Name of a preconfigured or custom application whose type the packet matches, as specified at configuration time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IP protocol: The Internet protocol used by the application—for example, TCP, UDP, ICMP. • ALG: If an ALG is explicitly associated with the policy, the name of the ALG is displayed. If application-protocol ignore is configured, ignore is displayed. Otherwise, 0 is displayed. However, even if this command shows ALG: 0, ALGs might be triggered for packets destined to well-known ports on which ALGs are listening, unless ALGs are explicitly disabled or when application-protocol ignore is not configured for custom applications. • Inactivity timeout: Elapsed time without activity after which the application is terminated. • Source port range: The low-high source port range for the session application. |
| Destination Address Translation | <p>Status of the destination address translation traffic:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • drop translated—Drop the packets with translated destination addresses. • drop untranslated—Drop the packets without translated destination addresses. |
| Application Firewall | <p>An application firewall includes the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rule-set—Name of the rule set. • Rule—Name of the rule. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dynamic applications—Name of the applications. • Dynamic application groups—Name of the application groups. • Action—The action taken with respect to a packet that matches the application firewall rule set. Actions include the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • permit • deny • Default rule—The default rule applied when the identified application is not specified in any rules of the rule set. |
| Action or Action-type | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The action taken in regard to a packet that matches the policy's tuples. Actions include the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • permit • firewall-authentication • tunnel ipsec-vpn <i>vpn-name</i> • pair-policy <i>pair-policy-name</i> • source-nat pool <i>pool-name</i> • pool-set <i>pool-set-name</i> • interface • destination-nat <i>name</i> • deny • reject • services-offload |
| Session log | <p>Session log entry that indicates whether the at-create and at-close flags were set at configuration time to log session information.</p> |

Table 9: show security policies Output Fields (*continued*)

| Field Name | Field Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Scheduler name | Name of a preconfigured scheduler whose schedule determines when the policy is active and can be used as a possible match for traffic. |
| Policy statistics | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Input bytes—The total number of bytes presented for processing by the device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initial direction—The number of bytes presented for processing by the device from the initial direction. • Reply direction—The number of bytes presented for processing by the device from the reply direction. • Output bytes—The total number of bytes actually processed by the device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initial direction—The number of bytes from the initial direction actually processed by the device. • Reply direction—The number of bytes from the reply direction actually processed by the device. • Input packets—The total number of packets presented for processing by the device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initial direction—The number of packets presented for processing by the device from the initial direction. • Reply direction—The number of packets presented for processing by the device from the reply direction. • Output packets—The total number of packets actually processed by the device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initial direction—The number of packets actually processed by the device from the initial direction. • Reply direction—The number of packets actually processed by the device from the reply direction. • Session rate—The total number of active and deleted sessions. • Active sessions—The number of sessions currently present because of access control lookups that used this policy. • Session deletions—The number of sessions deleted since system startup. • Policy lookups—The number of times the policy was accessed to check for a match. |
| Per policy TCP Options | Configured syn and sequence checks, and the configured TCP MSS value for the initial direction and /or the reverse direction. |

Sample Output

show security policies

```

user@host> show security policies
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
Policy: p1, State: enabled, Index: 4, Sequence number: 1
Source addresses:
sa-1-ipv4: 198.51.100.11/24
sa-2-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::1/32
sa-3-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::22/32
sa-4-wc: 203.0.113.1/255.255.0.255
Destination addresses:
da-1-ipv4: 2.2.2.2/24
da-2-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::8/32
da-3-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::9/32
da-4-wc: 192.168.22.11/255.255.0.255

```

```

Source identities: role1, role2, role4
Applications: any
Action: permit, application services, log, scheduled
Application firewall : my_ruleset1
Policy: p2, State: enabled, Index: 5, Sequence number: 2
Source addresses:
sa-1-ipv4: 198.51.100.11/24
sa-2-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::1/32
sa-3-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::22/32
Destination addresses:
da-1-ipv4: 2.2.2.2/24
da-2-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::1/32
da-3-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::9/32
Source identities: role1, role4
Applications: any
Action: deny, scheduled

```

show security policies policy-name detail

```

user@host> show security policies policy-name p1 detail
Policy: p1, action-type: permit, State: enabled, Index: 4
Description: The policy p1 is for the sales team
Sequence number: 1
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
Source addresses:
sa-1-ipv4: 198.51.100.11/24
sa-2-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::1/32
sa-3-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::9/32
sa-4-wc: 203.0.113.1/255.255.0.255
Destination addresses:
da-1-ipv4: 192.0.2.0/24
da-2-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::1/32
da-3-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::9/32
da-4-wc: 192.168.22.11/255.255.0.255
Source identities:
role1
role2
role4
Application: any
IP protocol: 0, ALG: 0, Inactivity timeout: 0
Source port range: [0-0]
Destination port range: [0-0]
Destination Address Translation: drop translated
Application firewall :
Rule-set: my_ruleset1
Rule: rule1
Dynamic Applications: junos:FACEBOOK, junos:YMSG
Dynamic Application groups: junos:web, junos:chat
Action: deny
Default rule: permit
Session log: at-create, at-close
Scheduler name: sch20
Per policy TCP Options: SYN check: No, SEQ check: No
Policy statistics:
Input bytes      : 18144      545 bps
Initial direction: 9072      272 bps
Reply direction  : 9072      272 bps
Output bytes     : 18144      545 bps
Initial direction: 9072      272 bps
Reply direction  : 9072      272 bps
Input packets    : 216        6 pps

```

| | | |
|---------------------|-----|-------|
| Initial direction: | 108 | 3 bps |
| Reply direction : | 108 | 3 bps |
| Output packets : | 216 | 6 pps |
| Initial direction: | 108 | 3 bps |
| Reply direction : | 108 | 3 bps |
| Session rate : | 108 | 3 sps |
| Active sessions : | 93 | |
| Session deletions : | 15 | |
| Policy lookups : | 108 | |

show security policies (Services-Offload)

```

user@host> show security policies
Default policy: deny-all
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
  Policy: p1, State: enabled, Index: 4, Scope Policy: 0, Sequence number: 1
    Source addresses: any
    Destination addresses: any
    Source identities: role1, role2, role4
    Applications: any
    Action: permit, services-offload, count
From zone: untrust, To zone: trust
  Policy: p2, State: enabled, Index: 5, Scope Policy: 0, Sequence number: 1
    Source addresses: any
    Destination addresses: any
    Source identities: role1, role2, role4
    Applications: any
    Action: permit, services-offload

```

show security policies (Device Identity)

```

user@host> show security policies
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
  Policy: dev-id-marketing, State: enabled, Index: 5, Scope Policy: 0,
Sequence number: 1
    Source addresses: any
    Destination addresses: any
    source-end-user-profile: marketing-profile
    Applications: any
    Action: permit

```

show security policies detail

```

user@host> show security policies detail
Default policy: deny-all
Policy: p1, action-type: permit, services-offload:enabled , State: enabled, Index:
4, Scope Policy: 0
  Policy Type: Configured
  Description: The policy p1 is for the sales team
  Sequence number: 1
  From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
  Source addresses:
    any-ipv4(global): 0.0.0.0/0
    any-ipv6(global): ::/0
  Destination addresses:
    any-ipv4(global): 0.0.0.0/0
    any-ipv6(global): ::/0
  Source identities:
    role1
    role2
    role4
  Application: any

```

```

IP protocol: 0, ALG: 0, Inactivity timeout: 0
Source port range: [0-0]
Destination port range: [0-0]
Per policy TCP Options: SYN check: No, SEQ check: No
Policy statistics:
  Input bytes      :          18144          545 bps
    Initial direction:          9072          272 bps
    Reply direction  :          9072          272 bps
  Output bytes     :          18144          545 bps
    Initial direction:          9072          272 bps
    Reply direction  :          9072          272 bps
  Input packets    :           216           6 pps
    Initial direction:          108           3 bps
    Reply direction  :          108           3 bps
  Output packets   :           216           6 pps
    Initial direction:          108           3 bps
    Reply direction  :          108           3 bps
  Session rate     :           108           3 sps
  Active sessions  :           93
  Session deletions :           15
  Policy lookups    :           108

Policy: p2, action-type: permit, services-offload:enabled , State: enabled, Index:
5, Scope Policy: 0
Policy Type: Configured
Description: The policy p2 is for the sales team
Sequence number: 1
From zone: untrust, To zone: trust
Source addresses:
  any-ipv4(global): 0.0.0.0/0
  any-ipv6(global): ::/0
Destination addresses:
  any-ipv4(global): 0.0.0.0/0
  any-ipv6(global): ::/0
Source identities:
  role1
  role2
  role4
Application: any
  IP protocol: 0, ALG: 0, Inactivity timeout: 0
  Source port range: [0-0]
  Destination port range: [0-0]
Per policy TCP Options: SYN check: No, SEQ check: No

```

show security policies detail (TCP Options)

```

user@host> show security policies policy-name policy1 detail
node0:
-----
Policy: policy1, action-type: permit, State: enabled, Index: 7, Scope Policy: 0
Policy Type: Configured
Sequence number: 2
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
Source addresses:
  any-ipv4(global): 0.0.0.0/0
  any-ipv6(global): ::/0
Destination addresses:
  any-ipv4(global): 0.0.0.0/0
  any-ipv6(global): ::/0
Application: any
  IP protocol: 0, ALG: 0, Inactivity timeout: 0
  Source port range: [0-0]

```

```

Destination port range: [0-0]
Per policy TCP Options: SYN check: No, SEQ check: No
Per policy TCP MSS: initial: 800, reverse: 900

```

show security policies policy-name (Negated Address)

```

user@host> show security policies policy-name p1
node0:
-----
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
Policy: p1, State: enabled, Index: 4, Scope Policy: 0, Sequence number: 1
Source addresses(excluded): as1
Destination addresses(excluded): as2
Applications: any
Action: permit

```

show security policies policy-name detail (Negated Address)

```

user@host> show security policies policy-name p1 detail
node0:
-----
Policy: p1, action-type: permit, State: enabled, Index: 4, Scope Policy: 0
Policy Type: Configured
Sequence number: 1
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
Source addresses(excluded):
  ad1(ad): 255.255.255.255/32
  ad2(ad): 198.51.100.1/24
  ad3(ad): 198.51.100.6 ~ 198.51.100.56
  ad4(ad): 192.0.2.8/24
  ad5(ad): 198.51.100.99 ~ 198.51.100.199
  ad6(ad): 203.0.113.9/24
  ad7(ad): 203.0.113.23/24
Destination addresses(excluded):
  ad13(ad2): 198.51.100.76/24
  ad12(ad2): 198.51.100.88/24
  ad11(ad2): 192.0.2.23 ~ 192.0.2.66
  ad10(ad2): 192.0.2.93
  ad9(ad2): 203.0.113.76 ~ 203.0.113.106
  ad8(ad2): 203.0.113.199
Application: any
  IP protocol: 0, ALG: 0, Inactivity timeout: 0
  Source port range: [0-0]
  Destination port range: [0-0]
Per policy TCP Options: SYN check: No, SEQ check: No

```

show security policies global

```

user@host> show security policies global policy-name Pa
node0:
-----
Global policies:
Policy: Pa, State: enabled, Index: 5, Scope Policy: 0, Sequence number: 1
From zones: zone1, zone2
To zones: zone3, zone4 Source addresses: any
Destination addresses: any
Applications: any
Action: permit

```

show security utm anti-spam statistics

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | show security utm anti-spam statistics |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4. |
| Description | Display antispam statistics for connections including total e-mail scanned, tagged, and dropped connections.

Statistics from both the nodes (with full chassis cluster support for UTM) are displayed. |
| Required Privilege Level | view |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• clear security utm anti-spam statistics on page 416• show security utm anti-spam status on page 439 |
| Output Fields | show security utm anti-spam statistics

Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear. |

show security utm anti-spam statistics

```
user@host> show security utm anti-spam statistics
Total connections:    0
Denied connections:  0
Total greetings:     0
Denied greetings:    0
Total e-mail scanned: 0
White list hit:      0
Black list hit:      0
Spam total:          0
Spam tagged:         0
Spam dropped:        0
DNS errors:          0
Timeout errors:      0
Return errors:       0
Invalid parameter errors: 0
```

show security utm anti-spam status

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | show security utm anti-spam status |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5 .
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4 . |
| Description | Display antispam status for connections including whitelist and blacklist server information. Status of both the nodes (with full chassis cluster support for UTM) is displayed. |
| Required Privilege Level | view |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • clear security utm anti-spam statistics on page 416 • show security utm anti-spam statistics on page 438 |
| Output Fields | show security utm anti-spam status

Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear. |

show security utm anti-spam status

```

user@host> show security utm anti-spam status
SBL Whitelist Server:
SBL Blacklist Server:
    msgsecurity.example.net

DNS Server:
  Primary   :    1.2.3.4, Src Interface: ge-0/0/0
  Secondary :    0.0.0.0, Src Interface: ge-0/0/1
  Ternary   :    0.0.0.0, Src Interface: fe-0/0/2

```

show security utm anti-virus statistics

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | show security utm anti-virus statistics <fpc <fpc-slot <i>fpc-slot</i> pic-slot <i>pic-slot</i> >> |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5. Support for Sophos Antivirus added in Junos OS Release 11.1.
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for Flexible PIC Concentrator (FPC) and PIC status added in Junos OS Release 12.1X46-D10. |
| Description | Display antivirus statistics for connections including clean and infected files, scan engine status, and aggregated statistics from all FPCs and PICs. Statistics from both the nodes (with full chassis cluster support for UTM) are displayed. |
| Required Privilege Level | view |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • clear security utm antivirus statistics on page 417 • show security utm anti-virus status on page 442 • The Express and Kaspersky Antivirus feature is not supported from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 onwards.request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine on page 421 • request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine on page 422 |
| List of Sample Output | show security utm anti-virus statistics on page 440
show security utm anti-virus statistics fpc on page 441
show security utm anti-virus statistics fpc fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0 on page 441 |
| Output Fields | show security utm anti-virus statistics

Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear. |

Sample Output

show security utm anti-virus statistics

```

user@host>show security utm anti-virus statistics
UTM Anti Virus statistics:
MIME-whitelist passed:           0
URL-whitelist passed:           0
Scan Request:

      Total          Clean          Threat-found      Fallback
        0             0              0             0

Fallback:
Log-and-Permit      Block          Permit
Engine not ready:   0              0              0
Out of resources:   0              0              0
Timeout:            0              0              0
Maximum content size: 0              0              0
Too many requests:  0              0              0
Others:             0              0              0

```


show security utm anti-virus statistics fpc

```
user@host>show security utm anti-virus statistics fpc
```

```
fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0
```

```
UTM Anti Virus statistics:
```

```
MIME-whitelist passed:          0
```

```
URL-whitelist passed:           0
```

```
Scan Request:
```

| Total | Clean | Threat-found | Fallback |
|-------|-------|--------------|----------|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

```
Fallback:
```

| | Log-and-Permit | Block | Permit |
|-----------------------|----------------|-------|--------|
| Engine not ready: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Out of resources: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Timeout: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Maximum content size: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Too many requests: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Others: | 0 | 0 | 0 |

show security utm anti-virus statistics fpc fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0

```
user@host>show security utm anti-virus statistics fpc fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0
```

```
UTM Anti Virus statistics:
```

```
MIME-whitelist passed:          0
```

```
URL-whitelist passed:           0
```

```
Scan Request:
```

| Total | Clean | Threat-found | Fallback |
|-------|-------|--------------|----------|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

```
Fallback:
```

| | Log-and-Permit | Block | Permit |
|-----------------------|----------------|-------|--------|
| Engine not ready: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Out of resources: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Timeout: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Maximum content size: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Too many requests: | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Others: | 0 | 0 | 0 |

show security utm anti-virus status

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | show security utm anti-virus status <fpc <fpc-slot <i>fpc-slot</i> pic-slot <i>pic-slot</i> >> |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for Flexible PIC Concentrator (FPC) and PIC status added in Junos OS Release 12.1X46-D10. |
| Description | Display antivirus status for connections including clean and infected files, scan engine status, and aggregated status from all FPCs and PICs. Status of both the nodes (with full chassis cluster support for UTM) is displayed. |
| Required Privilege Level | view |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• clear security utm antivirus statistics on page 417• show security utm anti-virus statistics on page 440 |
| List of Sample Output | show security utm anti-virus status on page 442
show security utm anti-virus status fpc on page 442
show security utm anti-virus status fpc fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0 on page 443 |
| Output Fields | show security utm anti-virus status

Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear. |

Sample Output

show security utm anti-virus status

```
user@host> show security utm anti-virus status
UTM anti-virus status:

Anti-virus key expire date: 2017-04-01 00:00:00
Update server: https://update.juniper-updates.net/SAV/
Interval: 1440 minutes
Pattern update status: next update in 1439 minutes
Last result: new database downloaded
Anti-virus signature version: 1.13 (1.02)
Scan engine type: sophos-engine
Scan engine information: last action result: No error
```

show security utm anti-virus status fpc

```
user@host> show security utm anti-virus status fpc
fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0
UTM anti-virus status:

Anti-virus key expire date: license not installed
Update server: http://update.juniper-updates.net/SAV/
Interval: 1440 minutes
Pattern update status: update disabled due to no license
Last result: already have latest database
Anti-virus signature version: 000000_00
```

```
Scan engine type: sophos-engine  
Scan engine information: last action result: No error
```

`show security utm anti-virus status fpc fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0`

```
user@host> show security utm anti-virus status fpc fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0  
UTM anti-virus status:  
  
Anti-virus key expire date: license not installed  
Update server: http://update.juniper-updates.net/SAV/  
Interval: 1440 minutes  
Pattern update status: update disabled due to no license  
Last result: already have latest database  
Anti-virus signature version: 000000_00  
Scan engine type: sophos-engine  
Scan engine information: last action result: No error
```

show security utm content-filtering statistics

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | show security utm content-filtering statistics |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4. |
| Description | Display content-filtering statistics for connections including lists of blocked files and the reasons for blocking. Statistics from both the nodes (with full chassis cluster support for UTM) are displayed. |
| Required Privilege Level | view |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• clear security utm content-filtering statistics on page 418 |
| Output Fields | show security utm content-filtering statistics

Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear. |

show security utm content-filtering statistics

```
user@host> show security utm content-filtering statistics
Content-filtering-statistic:      Blocked
Base on command list:           0
Base on mime list:               0
Base on extension list:         0
ActiveX plugin:                 0
Java applet:                    0
EXE files:                      0
ZIP files:                      0
HTTP cookie:                    0
```

show security utm session

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | show security utm session |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4. |
| Description | Display general UTM session information including all allocated sessions and active sessions. Also, display information from both nodes in a chassis cluster. |
| Required Privilege Level | view |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• clear security utm session on page 419• show security utm status on page 446 |
| Output Fields | show security utm session

When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request. |

show security utm session

```
user@host> show security utm session
Maximum sessions:      4000
Total allocated sessions: 0
Total freed sessions:  0
Active sessions:       0
```

show security utm status

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | show security utm status |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4. |
| Description | Display whether the UTM service is running or not and status of both the nodes (with full chassis cluster support for UTM). |
| Required Privilege Level | view |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• clear security utm session on page 419• show security utm session on page 445 |
| Output Fields | show security utm status

When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request. |

show security utm status

```
user@host> show security utm status
UTM service status: Running
```

show security utm web-filtering statistics

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Syntax | show security utm web-filtering statistics <fpc <fpc-slot fpc-slot pic-slot pic-slot>> |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for Flexible PIC Concentrator (FPC) and PIC statistics added in Junos OS Release 12.1X46-D10. |
| Description | Display Web filtering statistics for connections including whitelist and blacklist hits and custom category hits. The aggregated statistics from all FPCs and PICs and statistics from both the nodes (with full chassis cluster support for UTM) are also displayed. |
| Required Privilege Level | view |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • clear security utm web-filtering statistics on page 420 • show security utm web-filtering status on page 450 |
| List of Sample Output | show security utm web-filtering statistics on page 447
show security utm web-filtering statistics fpc on page 448
show security utm web-filtering statistics fpc fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0 on page 448 |
| Output Fields | show security utm web-filtering statistics

Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear. |

Sample Output

show security utm web-filtering statistics

```

user@host> show security utm web-filtering statistics
UTM web-filtering statistics:
  Total requests:                0
  white list hit:                0
  Black list hit:                0
  Queries to server:             0
  Server reply permit:           0
  Server reply block:            0
  Server reply quarantine:        0
  Server reply quarantine block:  0
  Server reply quarantine permit: 0
  Custom category permit:         0
  Custom category block:          0
  Custom category quarantine:     0
  Custom category quarantine block: 0
  Custom category quarantine permit: 0
  Site reputation permit:         0
  Site reputation block:          0
  Site reputation quarantine:     0
  Site reputation quarantine block: 0
  Site reputation quarantine permit: 0
  Site reputation by Category     0
  Site reputation by Global       0
  Cache hit permit:              0

```

```

Cache hit block:                0
Cache hit quarantine:           0
Cache hit quarantine block:     0
Cache hit quarantine permit:    0
Safe-search redirect:          0
Web-filtering sessions in total: 128000
Web-filtering sessions in use:  0
Fallback:                       log-and-permit      block
    Default                     0                0
    Timeout                     0                0
    Connectivity                 0                0
    Too-many-requests            0                0

```

show security utm web-filtering statistics fpc

```
user@host> show security utm web-filtering statistics fpc
```

```

fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0
UTM web-filtering statistics:
Total requests:                0
white list hit:                 0
Black list hit:                 0
Queries to server:              0
Server reply permit:            0
Server reply block:             0
Server reply quarantine:        0
Server reply quarantine block:  0
Server reply quarantine permit: 0
Custom category permit:         0
Custom category block:          0
Custom category quarantine:     0
Custom category quarantine block: 0
Custom category quarantine permit: 0
Site reputation permit:         0
Site reputation block:          0
Site reputation quarantine:     0
Site reputation quarantine block: 0
Site reputation quarantine permit: 0
Site reputation by Category     0
Site reputation by Global       0
Cache hit permit:               0
Cache hit block:                0
Cache hit quarantine:           0
Cache hit quarantine block:     0
Cache hit quarantine permit:    0
Safe-search redirect:          0
Web-filtering sessions in total: 128000
Web-filtering sessions in use:  0
Fallback:                       log-and-permit      block
    Default                     0                0
    Timeout                     0                0
    Connectivity                 0                0
    Too-many-requests            0                0

```

show security utm web-filtering statistics fpc fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0

```

user@host> show security utm web-filtering statistics fpc fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0
UTM web-filtering statistics:
Total requests:                0
white list hit:                 0

```



```

Black list hit:                                0
Queries to server:                            0
Server reply permit:                          0
Server reply block:                          0
Server reply quarantine:                      0
Server reply quarantine block:                0
Server reply quarantine permit:               0
Custom category permit:                       0
Custom category block:                        0
Custom category quarantine:                   0
Custom category quarantine block:              0
Custom category quarantine permit:            0
Site reputation permit:                       0
Site reputation block:                        0
Site reputation quarantine:                   0
Site reputation quarantine block:              0
Site reputation quarantine permit:            0
Site reputation by Category                   0
Site reputation by Global                     0
Cache hit permit:                             0
Cache hit block:                             0
Cache hit quarantine:                         0
Cache hit quarantine block:                   0
Cache hit quarantine permit:                  0
Safe-search redirect:                         0
Web-filtering sessions in total:              128000
Web-filtering sessions in use:                0
Fallback:                                     log-and-permit      block
    Default                                     0                    0
    Timeout                                    0                    0
    Connectivity                               0                    0
    Too-many-requests                          0                    0

```

show security utm web-filtering status

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Syntax | show security utm web-filtering status <fpc <fpc-slot fpc-slot pic-slot pic-slot>> |
| Release Information | Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.5.
Support for UTM in chassis cluster added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for Flexible PIC Concentrator (FPC) and PIC status added in Junos OS Release 12.1X46-D10. |
| Description | Display whether the Web filtering server connection is up or not. The aggregated status from all FPCs and PICs and status of both the nodes (with full chassis cluster support for UTM) are also displayed. |
| Required Privilege Level | view |
| Related Documentation | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• clear security utm web-filtering statistics on page 420• show security utm web-filtering statistics on page 447 |
| List of Sample Output | show security utm web-filtering status on page 450
show security utm web-filtering status fpc on page 450
show security utm web-filtering status fpc fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0 on page 450 |
| Output Fields | show security utm web-filtering status

Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear. |

Sample Output

show security utm web-filtering status

```
user@host> show security utm web-filtering status
UTM web-filtering status:
  Server status: Juniper Enhanced using Websense server UP
```

show security utm web-filtering status fpc

```
user@host> show security utm web-filtering status fpc
UTM web-filtering status fpc:
  fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0
  Connectivity status: UP
  fpc-slot 0 pic-slot 1
  Connectivity status: UP
```

show security utm web-filtering status fpc fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0

```
user@host> show security utm web-filtering status fpc fpc-slot 5 pic-slot 0
UTM web-filtering status:
  Connectivity status: UP
```